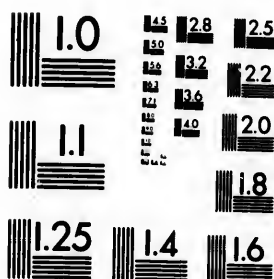
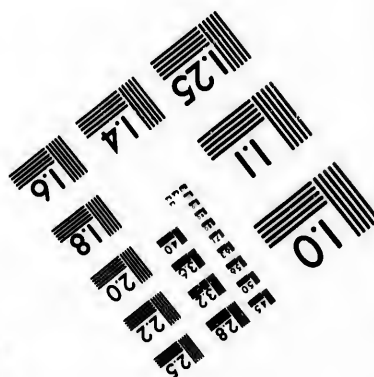


# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



6"



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14586  
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

**© 1982**

**Maps  
differ  
entire  
begin  
right  
requi  
meth**

**L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.**

- ☐ Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough/  
Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material/  
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- ☒ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata  
slips, tissues, etc., have been refiled to  
ensure the best possible image/  
Les pages totalement ou partiellement  
obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,  
etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à  
obtenir la meilleure image possible.

A horizontal number line with 23 equal segments, creating 24 boxes. The top of the line is labeled with 10X, 14X, 18X, 22X, 26X, and 30X. The bottom of the line is labeled with 12X, 16X, 20X, 24X, 28X, and 32X. An arrow points to the 7th box from the left, which is labeled 17X.

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

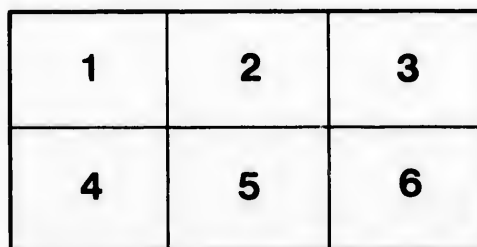
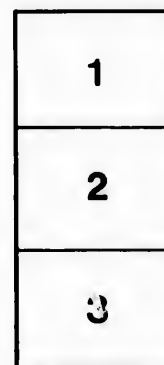
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



T

# Three Boys in the Wild North Land







ALEC SHOOTS THE BEAR.

*Frontispiece, see page 47.*



Artispiece, see page 42.



Small boat on the water.

Copyright, 1900, by the author.

# THREE BOYS IN THE WILD NORTH LAND

BY  
EGERTON R. YOUNG

AUTHOR OF 'BY CANOE AND DOG-TRAIN'  
'INDIAN WIGWAMS AND NORTHERN CAMP FIRES,' 'OOWIKAPUN,' ETC.

*With Twenty-Eight Illustrations from Drawings by  
J. E. LAUGHLIN, and from Photographs*

'He lived in wilds, and gems of story found,  
These fancy took, and hath this necklet bound.'  
F. R. Y., JR.

LONDON  
WARD & DOWNEY  
LIMITED  
12 YORK BUILDINGS ADELPHI W.C.  
NEW YORK: EATON & MAINS. TORONTO: WILLIAM BRIGGS

1897

[All Rights reserved]



PS 8497

08 T57

Juv

# CONTENTS

---

## CHAPTER I

	PAGE
Welcome to Sagastaweekee—Mr Ross, the Host—The Three Boys—Frank, Alec, Sam—The <i>Prince Arthur</i> —The Voyage—The Esquimaux—Arrival at York Factory, . . .	1

## CHAPTER II

Hudson Bay Company--Frank's Canoe Mishap—Duck Shooting—Clever Koonah—Goose Hunting—Queer Battles, . . .	10
---	----

## CHAPTER III

Writing Journals — Fur-Laden Brigades — Valuable Furs—Hunting Preparations—Big Tom, the Famous Guide—The Start—First Camp on the Rocks, . . . . .	24
---	----

## CHAPTER IV

An Early Call—The Picturesque Route—The Toilsome Portages—Rival Brigades—First Bear—Alec's Successful Shot, . . . . .	35
---	----

## CHAPTER V

	PAGE
Robinson's Portage—Gunpowder Transportation—Hole in the Keg—A Frightful Explosion—Enseoned at Headquarters —Delightful Home in the Wild .ness—Sturgeon Fishing —Involuntary Plunges, . . . . .	44

## CHAPTER VI

Indian Implements—Canoeing Excursion—Gunpowder <i>versus</i> Jack-fish—Loon Shooting—Sam's Successful Shot, . . . . .	58
--	----

## CHAPTER VII

The Old Fort Camp—Sam's Race with the Bear—Indian Comments, . . . . .	68
--	----

## CHAPTER VIII

reserving Meat—Cunning Partridges—Celestial Phenomenon —The Fearful Hurricane—Caught in the Storm—Disaster —The Mischievous Wolverine—Alec's Shot, . . . . .	75
--	----

## CHAPTER IX

Montreal Point—The Governor and the Iroquois—The Herd of Deer—Ominous Sounds—Pack of Wolves—A Fierce Battle—Welcome Reinforcements—Victory—Playing "Possum," . . . . .	91
---	----

## CHAPTER X

Romantic Courtship—The Happy Family—A Canoe Picnic-- Mustagan—A Prowling Bear—A Woman's Shot, . . . . .	107
--	-----

## CHAPTER XI

The Wonderful Story of Apetak, the Grateful Indian, and the Description of the Trip to, and View of, the Silver Cave, as told by Mr Ross at Sagastaweekee, . . . . .	117
--	-----

# CONTENTS

vii

## CHAPTER XII

	PAGE
Novel Fishing—Guns and Gaff-hooks—Frank's Plunge—Light-hearted Sam and His Story—Strange Battle—Pugnacious Jack-fish, . . . . .	126

## CHAPTER XIII

Mission Village—Self-denying Toilers—Pleasant Visits—Flourishing School—Syllabic Characters—Competitive Sports—Archery—Foot Races—Wrestling—Swimming—Canoe Races, . . . . .	136
---	-----

## CHAPTER XIV

Conjurers—Old Tapastanum—Boasting—Challenge accepted—Medicine Man's Tent—Bogus Bullet—Detected—Conjuror's Defeat and Fall, . . . . .	149
--	-----

## CHAPTER XV

Outing at the Old Fort—Alec and Mustagan's Shooting Contest: or, Gun <i>versus</i> Bow and Arrow—Shooting the Swans—Was Sam Cross-Eyed?—The Return Trip—The Escape of the Doe and Fawn from the Wolf, . . . . .	157
---	-----

## CHAPTER XVI

The Old Fort again—Aurora Borealis—Camp Annoyances—Unexpected Arrivals—Fur-Traders—Head Winds—Camp Fire Yarns, . . . . .	164
--	-----

## CHAPTER XVII

The Story of Pukumakun—Unloosing His Tongue—His Early Days—Excursion for Buffalo—Treacherous Quicksands—Sinking Mother—Sagacious Horse—Sneaking Wolves—Rattlesnake and Prairie-Dog, . . . . .	172
---	-----

## CHAPTER XVIII

Pukumakun's Story continued :—Searching for Friends—Pathless Prairie—Angry Relations—Avengers of Blood Unappeased—Race for Life—Overtaken—First Conflict—Arrow against Tomahawk—Opportune Arrival,	PAGE 181
--	-------------

## CHAPTER XIX

"Fair Wind!"—Fish Spearing by Torchlight—The Shining Eyes—Death of the Deer—Abundance of Game—Additional Excursions—Tradition of Nanahboozoo and the Flood—Was Nanahboozoo Noah?	188
--	-----

## CHAPTER XX

The Call of the Moose—Preparations for Capture—Midnight March—Rival Bulls—A Royal Battle—Frank's Shot—Big Tom, the Successful Moose Hunter—Young Moose Calves—Their Capture—Sam's Awkward Predicament,	201
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXI

Excursion to Sea-River Falls—The Cranberry Picking—The Contest—"Where are the Children?"—Wenonah and Roderick—Lost in the Forest—First Night's Unsuccessful Search—The Tracks in the Sand,	217
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXII

Mustagan's Discovery—Children's Footprints and Bears' Tracks—Children in Custody of the Bears—Silence enforced by the Custodians—The Plan of Rescue—The Boys' Part—The Bird Call—Success,	228
---	-----

## CHAPTER XXIII

Wenonah's Story of their Marvellous Adventures with, and Deliverance from, the Bears—Roderick's Comments,	228
---	-----

# CONTENTS

ix

## CHAPTER XXIV

PAGE

Congratulations—Other Incidents of Lost Children—Long Excursion by the Boys—Indian Legend—"Why is the Bear Tailless?"—Oxford Lake—Black Bears as Fishermen—The Lookout from the Trees—Fish-Stealing Bears—The Conflict—Bears <i>versus</i> Boys and Indians—Sam's Successful Thrust—Plenty of Bear Meat, . . . . .	248
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXV

A Successful Mission—Peculiar Address—The Visit to the Beavers—Commodious Houses—Well-constructed Dams—The Moonlight Sight—Strange Interruption—Stealthy Wolverine—Crouching Wolves—More Cunning Men—A Mixed-up Battle—Delighted Boys—Return to Sagastaweekee, . . . . .	268
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXVI

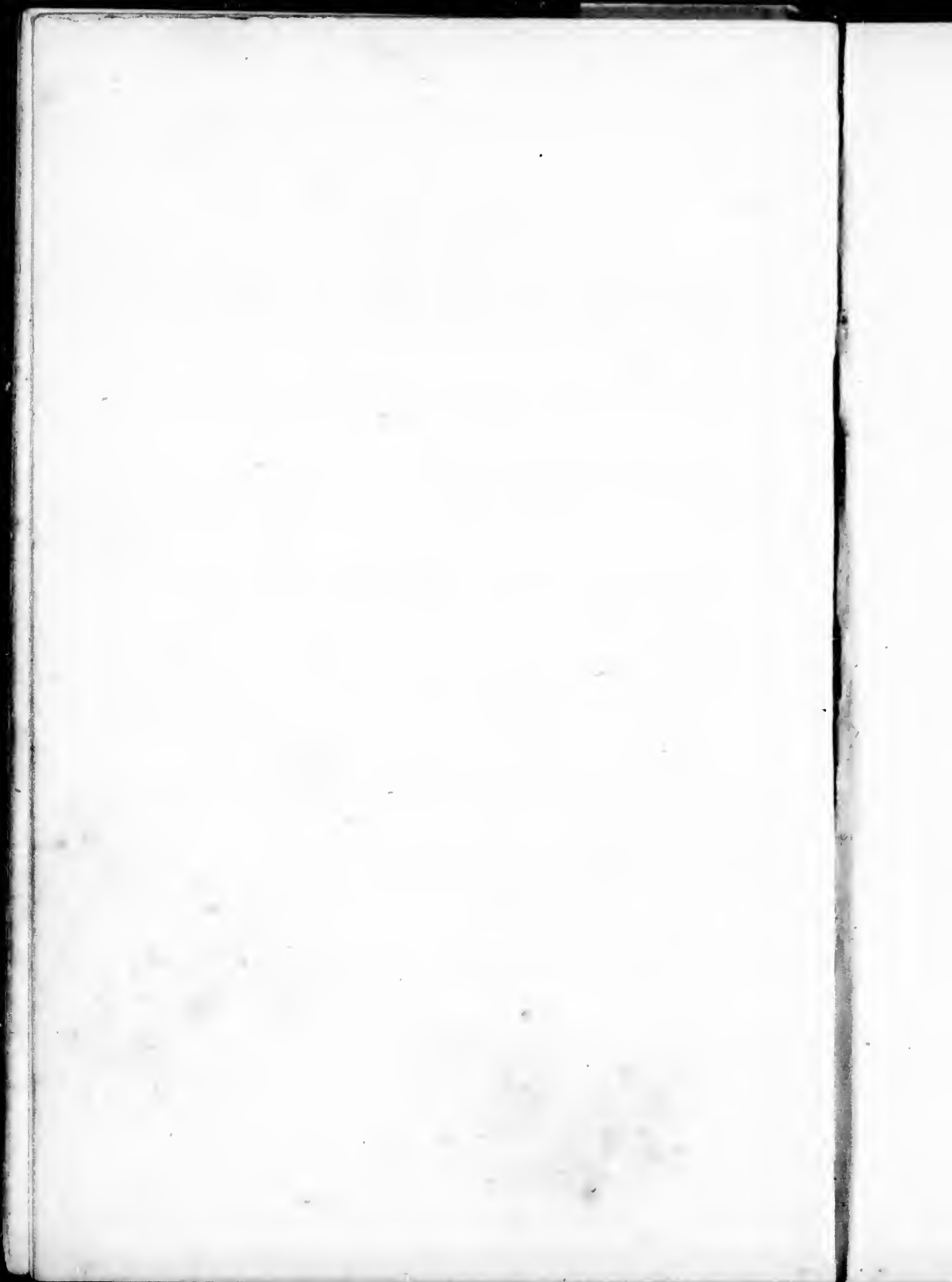
The Excursion into the Reindeer Country—Numerous Herds—The Battle Between Reindeer and Wolves in the Lake—Reaching the Herds—The Long Stalk for the Leader—Alec's Successful Shot—Consternation of the Herd—Abundance of Venison, . . . . .	281
---	-----

## CHAPTER XXVII

Frank's Adventures—The Reindeer followed—Unwelcome Interlopers—Cowardly Wolves Stalking the Fawns—Repelled by the Gallant Bucks—Close Quarters—Successful Shots—Different Game than Reindeer—Visions of Splendour, . . . . .	293
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXVIII

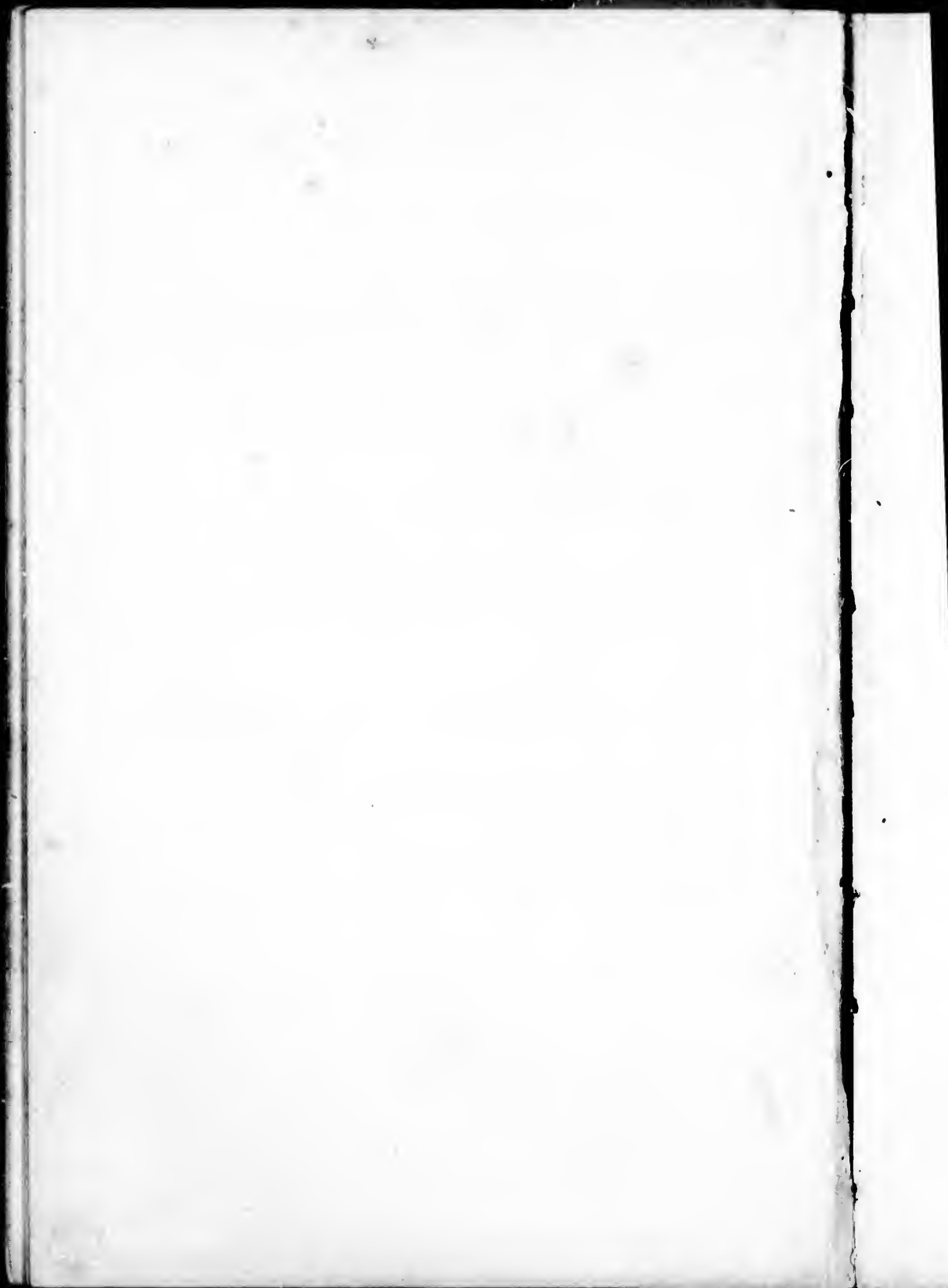
Boys' Adventure with Reindeer in the Lake—Gad-flies—And Other Deer Pests—Peculiar Weapons—Dangerous Antagonists—Hoofs and Horns—Frank's Success—Attack on the Leader—Canoe smashed—Alec and Indians in the Water—Sam's Stratagem—Success at Last—The Return Trip—Significant Signs—Ducks and Geese Heading Southward—Indians uneasy—Journey hastened—Sagastaweekee reached—Summer ended—Winter begun, . . . . .	299
---	-----



## ILLUSTRATIONS

	CHAP.	PAGE
ALEC SHOOTING THE BEAR, . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>	<i>see page 42</i>
FRANK'S UPSET IN THE CANOE, . . .	II.	<i>facing 11</i>
KNOCKED OUT BY A GOOSE, . . .	II.	22
BIG TOM (Photo), . . .	III.	29
MAKING THE PORTAGE, . . .	IV.	38
SPEARING THE STURGEON, . . .	V.	54
YOUNG DEER ON THE SHORE (Photo), . . .	VI.	61
SAM'S RACE WITH THE BEAR, . . .	VII.	<i>facing 71</i>
ALEC SHOOTING THE WOLVERINE, . . .	VIII.	88
THE BATTLE WITH THE WOLVES, . . .	IX.	101
A WOMAN'S SUCCESSFUL SHOT, . . .	X.	115
PECULIAR NET FISHING (Photo), . . .	XII.	127
SAM TOWED BY THE JACK-FISH, . . .	XII.	<i>facing 132</i>
THE YOUNG ARCHER (Photo), . . .	XIII.	140
THE WRESTLING MATCH, . . .	XIII.	<i>facing 145</i>
DEFEAT OF THE MEDICINE MAN, . . .	XIV.	155
SINKING IN THE QUICKSANDS, . . .	XVII.	176
THE AVENGER OF BLOOD, . . .	XVIII.	187
SHOOTING DEER BY TORCHLIGHT, . . .	XIX.	193
CENTENARIAN INDIAN'S ENCAMPMENT (Photo), . . .	XIX.	194
YOUNG MOOSE (Photo), . . .	XX.	214
A ROYAL BATTLE, . . .	XX.	<i>facing 210</i>
CHILDREN IN THE CUSTODY OF BEARS . . .	XXII.	230
RODERICK AND WENONAH IN THE BEARS' CAVE, . . .	XXIII.	244
SAM'S SUCCESSFUL THRUST, . . .	XXIV.	266
A PAINTER'S VISION, A POET'S DREAM (Photo), . . .	XXVI.	282
ALEC SHOOTS THE LEADER OF THE REINDEER, . . .	XXVI.	<i>facing 290</i>
REINDEER ATTACKS THE CANOE, . . .	XXVII.	304





# THREE BOYS IN THE WILD NORTH LAND

## CHAPTER I

Welcome to Sagastaweekee — Mr Ross, the Host — The  
Three Boys—Frank, Alec, Sam—The *Prince Arthur*  
—The Voyage—The Esquimaux—Arrival at York  
Factory.

“WELCOME to the Wild North Land! Welcome to  
our happy home in the Land of the North Wind!  
Welcome, thrice welcome all and each one of you!”

Thus heartily and rapidly did Mr Ross address a  
trio of sunburnt, happy boys, who, with all the  
assurance of a joyous welcome, had burst in upon  
him in his comfortable, well-built home or “hunting-  
lodge,” as he preferred to call it, on the banks of the  
Nelson River. This cosy but isolated home was  
situated some hundreds of miles up in the interior of  
the country from York Factory on the Hudson Bay.

Mr Ross had named his house “Sa-gas-ta-wee-kee,”  
a beautiful Indian word, which literally means “a  
house full of sunshine.” He had spent most of his  
days as an official in the Hudson Bay Company’s  
service, as had his father before him, and a few years  
before this, being possessed of abundance of means,

he had retired from active work in the great fur-trading company. He had tried to settle down in an older civilised land, but had found it impossible to content himself away from those regions where he had spent the best part of his life. His wife and family were of the same mind, and so, after some years of travel in various lands, they returned to this northern country, where they had spent many happy days.

Every year or two Mr Ross, with some members of his family, was in the habit of visiting what he loved to call the Mother Country. So full was his life of varied and startling adventures, that he was often asked to give addresses on some of the marvellous experiences through which he had passed.

Among those who listened to him with keen interest, as he gave a series of addresses in one of the great historic schools in the home land, were the three boys who are to be the heroes of this book. Although they were from different families and nationalities yet they were congenial spirits, and were equally filled with the love of sport and of exciting adventure. For such boys, Mr Ross's addresses about Indians, wild animals, and the excitements of the hunt, had the greatest fascination. They had managed to make his personal acquaintance, and had induced him to visit their different towns, where he lectured, and to be the guest at their homes, where his delightful stories had charmed every member of their households.

After this it was not so difficult to persuade their parents to consent to their spending a year or so in the wilds of the northern part of the great Dominion of Canada, under his guidance, and he most good-naturedly pleaded for this arrangement on their

behalf. It was impossible for them to return with Mr Ross, on account of their studies, and several months passed away ere it was practicable for them to begin their journey, so he had gone back alone, and had made all preparations at home for entertaining them, as members of his household, for an indefinite period.

Letters had been sent on in advance notifying the probable time of the boys' arrival. But, as often happened in that wild country where there was no postal service, the letters never arrived, and so the first intimation Mr Ross had of their coming was their bursting in upon him. Of course they were welcome. In all new lands there is an open-hearted hospitality that is very delightful, and this was emphatically so in the vast, lonely region of the Hudson Bay Territory, where the white men in those days were so few and so widely scattered apart from each other.

And now that they are snugly ensconced in the home of their good friend and his hospitable family, ere we begin to describe their many sports and adventures, let us find out something about our heroes, and have them describe some of the incidents of the long trip which they have already made on their journey to this Land of the North Wind.

Frank, the eldest of the three, was the son of a Liverpool banker. His friends had vainly tried to divert his mind from wild adventure and exciting sports, and persuade him to settle down to steady routine office work. Failing in this, they had listened to Mr Ross's invitation, and had consented to let him have the year in the Wild North Land, hoping that its trials and hardships would effect-

ually cure him of his love of adventure, and cause him to settle down cheerfully at his father's business.

Alec was from Scotland, a genuine son of the "mountain and the moor." While a good student when at school, yet, when at home on his holidays, his great delight had ever been, under the guidance of a faithful old gillie, to follow on the trail of the mountain deer. For a wider field than that offered by his native Highlands he had been so longing that his friends yielded to his importunities, and so now here he is, with his comrades, full of eager anticipations.

Sam was from what his mother used to call "dear, dirty Dublin." He was full of life and fun, a jolly Irish boy of the finest type. Storms and privations might at times depress the spirits of the others, but Sam, true to his nationality, never lost his spirits or his good nature. So rapid had been his progress in his studies, that he had pushed himself beyond his years, and even his tutors had joined in his request that he should have the year off, which, spent in the invigorating air and healthful adventures in the Wild North Land, would, doubtless, be a blessing to both mind and body.

In the good ship *Prince Arthur* of the Hudson Bay Company, our three young adventurers set sail in the month of May, from the London Docks. They met with no adventures worth recording until after they had left Stornoway, in the Orkney Isles, where they had called for their last consignment of supplies and the latest mails. Here they also shipped some hardy Orkney men and Highlanders, who were going out in the employment of the Company.

The *Prince Arthur* was a staunch sailing vessel,

built especially for the Hudson Bay Company's trade. She was employed in carrying out to that country the outfit of goods required in the great fur trade. Her return cargoes were the valuable furs obtained in barter from the Indians. Her destination was York Factory, on the western side of the Hudson Bay. There her cargo was to be discharged, and carried by scores of inland boats and canoes to the various trading posts in the different parts of that great country, which is larger than the whole continent of Europe.

So remote were some of those posts from the seaboard, and so difficult and slow were the methods of transporting the goods, that several years passed ere the fur secured from them reached the London markets, to which they were all consigned, and where they were carried each year in the Company's ships.

Although the *Prince Arthur* was far from being a first-class passenger ship, yet she was a good, seaworthy vessel, with plenty of room for the few passengers who travelled by her each year. These were principally gentlemen of the Hudson Bay Company's service and their friends, or missionaries going out or returning home.

Letters from influential quarters secured for our three boys the considerate attention of the captain and the ship's officers, and their own bright ways won the friendship of all the sailors on board. On the whole, they had a most successful passage. Fogs at times perplexed them, and a few enormous icebergs were so near that careful tacking was required to prevent accidents. The boys were filled with admiration at these great mountains of ice; some of them seemed like great islands, while others more closely resembled glorious cathedrals

built in marble and emerald. At times, as the western sun shone upon them, they seemed to take on in parts every colour of the rainbow. With great interest were they watched as they slowly drifted beyond the southern horizon.

One of the most exciting incidents of the voyage was a battle witnessed between a great whale and a couple of sword-fish. The unwieldy monster seemed to be no match for his nimble antagonists. His sole weapon seemed to be his enormous tail, and vain were his efforts to strike his quicker enemies. As far as could be judged from the deck of the ship, the sword-fish were masters of the situation, and the blood-stained waters seemed to indicate that the battle would soon be over.

In the southern part of Davis Strait they encountered great fields of floating ice, on which were many herds of seals. The captain had the ship hove-to and three boats lowered. In each he permitted one of the boys to go with the sailors on a seal-hunting expedition. The seals, which are very active in water, where they can swim with such grace and rapidity, are helpless on land or ice, and large numbers were killed by the sailors. While the boys were excited with the sport, they could not but feel sorry for the poor, defenceless creatures, as they looked at them out of their great eyes, that seemed almost human. Some hundreds of skins were secured, much to the delight of the captain and crew, as the profit coming to them from their sales would be no inconsiderable item.

At the mouth of Hudson Straits the captain again had the ship hove-to for a day or so to trade with a number of Esquimaux, who had come in their curious canoes, called "kayaks," from along the

coasts of Labrador. Their insatiable curiosity and peculiar fur clothing very much interested the boys. These Esquimaux were shrewd hands at a bargain, but their principal desire seemed to be to obtain implements of iron in exchange for their furs. They cared nothing for flour, rice, tea, coffee or sugar. They knew no other food than meat and oil, and craved no other things than those that could be utilised in improving their weapons. Guns were unknown among them, but they were very skilful in the use of the harpoon and the spear. When they are able to obtain iron from the white man they make their harpoon heads, spears and knives out of this metal; but when unable to secure it they manufacture their weapons out of the horns of the reindeer or the tusks of the walrus or narwhal.

They had among their furs some splendid bearskins, and the boys were very much interested in hearing them tell, through an interpreter, how with their rude weapons, aided by their clever dogs, they had been able to kill these fierce animals. They were told by the friendly Esquimaux that with two well-trained dogs nipping at the hind legs of a great bear they could keep him turning round and round from one to the other, and thus get him so wild and excited that in his fruitless efforts to catch hold of the nimble animals, he did not notice the arrival of the hunters, and they were able to approach close enough to kill him easily.

The ship crossed the great Hudson Bay, which is about six hundred miles in width, without any mishap, and safely dropped anchor in what the Hudson Bay officers call "the six-fathom hole," some distance out from the rude, primitive wharf.



The signal gun was fired, and soon a brigade of boats came out and the work of unloading the cargo began.

Our boys, eager as they were to land, were sorry after all to leave their snug berths in the good ship, where they had had some very delightful times during the thirty days that had elapsed since they had left the docks in old England.

A few gifts were bestowed among their particular sailor friends, and then with "God bless you!" from all, they entered a small boat rowed by Indians, and were soon on the land that skirts this great inland sea.

Great indeed was the change from the populous cities of the home land to this quiet, lonely region upon whose shores they had now landed. Here the only inhabitants were the fur-traders, with their employees, and the dignified, stoical Indians. The only signs of habitations were the few civilised dwellings called in courtesy the Fort, where dwelt and traded the officers of the great Company and their families and servants, and not very far off was the Indian village of the natives, where the most conspicuous buildings were the church and parsonage of the missionary, who had been marvellously successful in planting the cross in these northern regions, and in winning from a degrading superstition to the blessings of Christianity some hundreds of red men, whose consistent lives showed the genuineness of the work wrought among them.

This great region, stretching from the Atlantic to the Pacific, far north of the fertile prairie region, where millions will yet find happy and prosperous homes, has well been called the Wild North Land. The

Indians call it Keewatin, the Land of the North Wind.

It has not many attractions for the farmer or merchant, but it is the congenial home of the red man. On its innumerable lakes and broad rivers he glides along, during the few bright summer months, in his light canoe. Every waterfall or cataract has associated with it some legend or tradition. Its dense forests are the haunts of the bear and wolf, of the moose and reindeer, and many other valuable animals, in the excitement of hunting which he finds his chief delight.

To this land had come our three lads for sport and adventure, and we shall see how fully all their expectations were realised.

## CHAPTER II

Hudson Bay Company—Frank's Canoe Mishap—Duck Shooting—Clever Koona—Goose Hunting—Queer Battles.

As our boys had come out to this country for wild adventure and exciting sport, they were rather pleased than otherwise at the contrast it presented in comparison with the lands they had left behind. The fact was, they were simply delighted with the absence of the multitudes, to whom they had been accustomed, and were at once filled with high expectations. Sam's explanation seemed to express the sentiment of them all, when he exclaimed,—

“Sure, if there are so few people in the country, there will be the more bears and wolves for us to kill.”

The work of unloading the ship was necessarily slow, and so some days must elapse ere this could be accomplished and a brigade of boats be prepared to take the first cargo to Fort Garry, on the Red River. The boys had been cordially welcomed by Mr M'Tavish, the principal officer in charge at the Fort, and they were all entertained most hospitably at his home.

Mr M'Tavish was an old sportsman himself, as nearly all the Hudson Bay Company's officials are, and, as soon as the boys had made the acquaint-

ack  
eer

wild  
ased  
com-  
fact  
e of  
ned,  
am's  
nem

try,  
s to

rily  
uld  
red  
Red  
by  
the  
bly

as  
ure,  
nt-



FRANK'S UPSET FROM THE CANOE.

ance, as they call it, of their land legs, after the heaving and rolling of the vessel, he bade a clever, old Indian hunter clean up some guns, and take them, rigged out in native dress, in the birch canoe, on their first wild hunting expedition. This first excursion was not to be a very formidable one. It was only a canoe trip several miles up the coast, to a place where wild ducks and geese were numerous. Like all white people on their first introduction to the birch canoe, they thought it a frail, cranky boat, and were quite disgusted with some of the tricks it played upon them on their first attempts to manage it. For example, Frank, who prided himself on his ability in pulling an oar and in managing the ordinary small skiffs or punts of his native waters, seeing the light, buoyant canoe at the side of the little launch, boldly sprang into it as he would into an ordinary boat of the same size in the Mersey.

To his utter amazement, and the amusement of others, he suddenly found himself overbalanced and struggling in the waves on the other side. Fortunately the water was not more than six feet deep, and he, being a good swimmer, was soon up, and at once gave chase for the canoe, which had floated out several yards from the shore. In this he was encouraged by the laughter and shouts of his comrades and others, who, seeing that no harm had come to him from his sudden spill, were eager to observe how he would ultimately succeed.

Quickly did he catch up to the truant, but instead of listening to the Indian, who, in broken English, tried to tell him to get in over the end of the canoe, he seized it by the side, and there attempted to climb in. Vain were his efforts. Very skilful, indeed, is the

Indian who can in this manner get into a birch bark canoe; and of course it is out of the question to expect an inexperienced white person to accomplish the feat. So light is the canoe that, when thus seized, it yields to the slightest pull, and often causes the person who takes hold of it to tumble back ignominiously into the water.

Poor Frank was disgusted, but not conquered; and so, amidst the laughter of those on shore, he now listened to the advice and direction of the wise old Indian, who was the only one in the company who had not even smiled at the boy's mishap. By his direction he again caught hold of the canoe, but this time by the end, and carefully bearing his weight upon it, he was at length enabled to work himself on board. Cautiously balancing himself, he seized a paddle that happened to have been fastened in, and quickly paddled himself ashore amidst the cheers of the onlookers.

"Well done, Frank!" said the old Indian.

He had done what some take months to accomplish. He had conquered the canoe in his first attempt, and never after in his adventures was he afraid of that bonny craft, in which he spent many happy hours, and in the paddling of which he became the equal of many a clever Indian.

Of course there was some delay in the departure of the hunting party, as Frank had to return to his quarters at the Post, and get on a dry suit of clothing. This, however, is an operation that does not take a boy, full of eager excitement, long to accomplish, and so it was not many minutes ere the party set off on their promised excursion.

The Indian in charge, whose name was Ooseememou, decided that they should first go where the

ducks were numerous, and to interest these young English lads he adopted a method of hunting them that was both novel and successful. Indeed, it is a very rare method, which was here successfully tried, on account of the difficulty of getting a dog sufficiently trained to do what is necessary. But this old native had, by great patience and kindness, so drilled his clever dog that he acted his part with extraordinary skill and tact. He called the little fellow Koonah, which is the Cree for snow, and was very appropriate, as the animal was of the purest white.

Taking the dog into the canoe with them, and giving all necessary directions, they soon were gliding along the coast of the great bay. Numerous flocks of ducks flew over their heads, and far away in the distance the water seemed almost alive with the number of them on the dancing, sparkling waves. This latter sight seemed to be what the old hunter was looking for, and the canoe was quickly paddled ashore, and carried up on the beach. There he carefully guided the party along. They had to creep cautiously behind some low, dense willow bushes that grew on the shore, with only a broad fringe of white sand between them and the waters.

Each boy, with his gun and ammunition, was now assigned his post behind a clump of bushes, and given his final instructions. The lads were full of excitement and curiosity, and wondered how it was going to be possible for them to reach, with ordinary guns, the ducks which were carelessly swimming in multitudes some hundreds of yards out from the shore. But they had not long to wait or conjecture. When the old Indian had seen that all were in their right places, he gave a low whistle, which was more like the call of a sea-bird than a human voice. So



natural was it that no bird around was startled by it, but the well-trained Koonah, who had been left by the boat, fully knew its meaning, and now began his sagacious work. Like a little white Arctic fox he was, and like one he began his antics on the shore. He frisked and danced around along the sand, playing all sorts of antics. He walked on his hind feet, turned somersaults in quick succession; he acted as though possessed with perpetual motion, but not one yelp or bark or any sound did he utter.

A stranger would have imagined that his appearance and strange movements would have driven all the ducks that were near enough to the shore to observe him and his antics farther out to sea. But just the reverse happened. A spirit of curiosity seemed to possess those nearest the shore, and as they began to swim in nearer and nearer, their movements influenced those farther out, until hundreds of splendid birds were soon swimming towards the sandy beach, on which the cunning dog continued his peculiar and varied motions. At first he had kept at some distance from the sands, back of which grew the clumps of willows behind which the hunters were hidden. But when he saw that his manoeuvres had attracted the ducks near the shore, he gradually worked down the sandy beach, until he had them fairly opposite the muzzles of the guns.

A low bird-cry from his master was the signal for his change of tactics, and with loud yelping, fox-like barking, he sprang into the waves.

The ducks, thus suddenly alarmed, instantly rose up in hundreds, the simultaneous reports of the guns rang out, and between thirty and forty dead and wounded, fell back into the water. Our hunters, both the Indian and the three boys, leapt from their

hiding-places, and with Koonas aid secured their splendid bag of game.

This was rare sport, and afforded the boys so much delight that old Ooseemeemou decided to postpone the goose-hunt until next day, and give them an opportunity of seeing the sagacity of Koonas, the clever little dog that had contributed so much to the success of the expedition, displayed in another way.

They returned to their places, and were told to keep as much hidden as possible, as the ducks, now alarmed by the reports of the guns, and the death and wounding of so many of their numbers, would be shy and excited, and would keep flying around for some time ere they would again alight. Koonas, in the meantime, had curled himself up like a ball of white wool, and was also quite hidden from the sight of the flying birds.

In about half-an-hour the ducks began to alight once more in the water. They were very alert and watchful, and seemed resolved not to be a second time caught napping. But ducks are silly things, and are easily deceived, or have very short memories. Anyway, it was the case with these. When a goodly number of them were again seen swimming about, a peculiar sound, like the cry of a sea-gull, was heard, and soon Koonas was observed moving very cautiously out to a little point on the sandy beach, just in front of the clump of bushes behind which his master was hidden. Here he curled himself up into a little white bundle, and remained perfectly still. Soon after, the boys were startled by the sounds of the loud quacking of ducks over the very place where Koonas lay so motionless and quiet. At first they were surprised at this, as not a duck was now seen flying in that

direction. A little closer investigation showed them that the quacking sounds were all proceeding from the mouth of the old Indian, who, like many of his people, are able to imitate so perfectly the cries and calls of the birds and beasts of the lakes and forests, that at times even the most experienced are completely deceived. In addition, this Indian was also a ventriloquist, and was able to throw his voice so correctly that the quacking of the ducks seemed to proceed from where the dog, still motionless, was lying. The old Indian afterwards explained that the calls were of ducks that had found something of interest, and were invitations for other ducks to come and see; and that when he had induced some of the ducks to take up the call, they would go on repeating it until so many others took it up, that all became anxious to see what the fuss was about.

"Ducks," added the old man, "are like people—sometimes curious to see when there is not much after all."

So, because of the calls to come and look, the flocks kept flying or swimming nearer and nearer, and all there was to see was only a ball of something very white and still. Not an hour before they were curious to see the antics of a lively little white dog, now they were curious to see him apparently motionless and dead. By carefully peering through the dense bushes, the boys, with guns loaded, were able to see the dog quivering with suppressed excitement, as the many quackings of the ducks told him of the success of his ruse. However, he was so well trained that he would not move until the welcome signal was given. And then, with a bound and a bark he was up, and again, as the startled birds rose in the air, the reports of the guns rang out, and nearly as many more fine

ducks fell before the simultaneous discharge. This was capital sport. Koonas's sagacity and thorough training, in being thus able to bring the ducks within range of the guns, first by his comical antics and then by his perfect quiet, very much delighted the lads. Their only regret was that, when they wanted to pet and fondle him, he resented their familiarity, and growled at them most decidedly. Indian dogs do not, as a rule, take to white people at first, but kindness soon wins them, and they often become fast friends.

The canoe was again launched, and the hunters proceeded a couple of miles further, and had some more good shooting. Very proud and happy were they with this their first day's experience, and often did they in after days have much to say of the marvellous cleverness of the spotless Koonas.

As the brigades were not yet ready to leave for the interior with the supplies for the trading posts, Mr M'Tavish readily consented to another excursion, quietly observing that the return of a few such well-loaded canoes would add materially to the Fort's supply of food.

This second excursion was to be to a more distant place, where were some favourite feeding grounds of wild geese. Geese are very fond of a jointed quill-like grass, and when once they have found where their favourite food grows, there they resort in great numbers, and, unless very persistently hunted, will keep in the neighbourhood until they have eaten it all.

As the distance was so great, it was decided to make an all-day trip of it, and two canoes were requisitioned, with two experienced Indians in each, of whom one, of course, was Ooseemeemou. To him

the boys had become very much attached, and as he had some knowledge of English, they were able to get a good deal of reliable information from him. Some food and kettles were taken along with them, and old Ooseemeemou put in the bottom of each canoe a good-sized oil-cloth and a couple of blankets, saying as he did so,—

“Fine weather to-day—may not be so very long.”

Frank and Alec were given good places in one of the canoes, and Sam was placed in charge of the other two Indians. Each boy was furnished with two guns and plenty of ammunition. Being eager to get to the hunting grounds, they each selected a paddle and were found to be not unskilful in its use, even in a birch canoe, after a few lessons from their Indian attendants. With the best wishes of all who were not too busy to come down to the launch to see them off, they started on their excursion under the skilful, steady strokes of the Indians. Aided by the boys they were able to make about seven miles an hour, and so in about three hours they reached their destination. The splendid exercise, and the bracing air, gave them all good appetites, and they pulled up in a secluded little bay where some dry wood was to be found. Here a fire was kindled, the kettles were filled with water and boiled, and a good, substantial meal of the delicacies of the country was spread before them. What the bill of fare was we know not, except that the principal part consisted of some of the ducks shot on the previous excursion. The dinner thus prepared, and eaten on the rocks, was much enjoyed by the boys, but they were kept in a perpetual state of excitement by the numerous cries of the wild geese. These could be distinctly heard, and the birds could fre-

quently be seen, as they kept flying in great lines or triangles to and from their feeding grounds.

As this was a favourite resort for the Indian hunters, preparations had been made for goose hunting. Large, nest-like piles of dry hay, reeds and rushes, had been gathered in certain favourite places. In the centre of each of these a hollow, like a bird's nest, had been formed, large enough for two persons to ensconce themselves cosily in, and so low down as only to be observed by the geese when flying directly overhead. After dinner, four of these big, nest-like affairs were freshened up with some bundles of dry grass, which was cut in an old, disused beaver meadow.

A number of old decoys, made to look like geese when feeding, were arranged in the right position, which always varies according to the direction of the wind. Then Ooseemeemou, taking Frank with him, gave Alec and Sam each in charge of a clever Indian companion. One Indian, whose name was Oostaseemou had a nest to himself. Thus assorted, our party took possession of their four nests and awaited developments. The boys were greatly amused at the queer, little, white cotton caps which each one had to put on. Everything in the way of colour had to be carefully hidden. Geese are not easily alarmed by anything white, and will come quite near to persons thus dressed.

While waiting for the arrival of the game, the boys were instructed how to act in case the geese should come within range. They generally fly down with the wind, and arise facing it. Hence the decoys are so arranged in the goose-grass, that the geese, in coming down to join those already there, must, in availing themselves of the wind in order

to help them to alight, come within range of the nests in which are hidden the hunters. Then when the firing of the guns alarms them, and those unhurt rise to escape, they have so to use the wind to help them that they again come within range, and thus receive a second volley. When the second volley is fired, the dead are quickly secured by the hunters, who jump out of the nests, and make chase after the wounded. There is a lot of fun, and some danger of ugly knocks, for an old wounded goose sometimes makes a good fight, and can give a most wicked blow.

Fortunately for our young hunters, a good stiff breeze was blowing when they took their places in these queer nests, and with their two guns apiece in position patiently waited the arrival of the geese. Several flocks had been seen in the distance, and their strange cries were heard on every side. While the men were on the move getting things ready, none of the wary birds came within range. However, now that all was still and quiet in the vicinity of the choicest feeding grounds, a few old outguards appeared cautiously flying over, and seem to have reported that nothing was to be seen in the nests but some patches of snow. The Indians say that the geese mistake them, when dressed in white, for lumps of snow. Soon afterwards a great flock was seen coming with the wind, from the south, directly towards them.

Old Ooseemeemou began to imitate the call of the geese, and throwing his voice so that it seemed to come from the decoys, it appeared as if they in the goose-grass were saying, "Honk! honk! honk!" which the Indians say is the goose language for "Food! food! food!"



Ooseemeemou knew well how to imitate them, and the great flock understood it as the call from some of their fortunate companions ; and down they came with the wind, passing in close range on the left-hand side of the hunters.

"Bang! bang! bang!" rang out the guns of the three boys and of the four Indians, and five or six great geese tumbled to the ground, some of them dead and others badly wounded. The startled, frightened, surviving geese, that thought they were going to have such a feast among their fellows, had only time to turn round and strive to escape by rising up against the wind, on the opposite sides of those dry nests. This was what the clever Indians knew they would do, and as they came within range, struggling against the wind, each hunter, white and Indian, at once used his second gun, and nearly as many more plump geese dropped to the ground dead or wounded.

Now the fun began. There was a hasty springing out from the nests, and every man and boy dashed off for his goose. The Indians were wary and experienced, and knew how to act. But our enthusiastic boys, in the excitement of securing their first wild goose, recklessly rushed in to the attack.

Alec was the first to come to grief. The old gander that he was pursuing had a broken wing, but as his legs were all right he led him a lively chase of several hundred yards. Then, seeing that he was being overtaken, he stopped suddenly and, turning the well wing towards the boy, awaited his coming. Alec, seeing him thus standing with one wing hanging broken to the ground, anticipated nothing but an easy capture, and thoughtlessly



attempted to throw himself on the bird and capture him in his arms.

Poor fellow, when picked up, he could hardly tell what had happened, only that it seemed to him he had been pounded with sledge-hammers, and had seen some thousands of stars.

What had really happened was this: The instant Alec sprang forward and stooped to seize his game, the goose, with his unwounded wing, hit him such a blow on the head that it quite stunned him, and this had been followed by several other blows in rapid succession. Fortunately old Ooseemeemou was not far off. He rushed to Alec's rescue and speedily despatched the bird, and thus delivered the boy from the humiliating position of being badly whipped by a wounded goose. Poor fellow, he long carried, in the black and blue marks on his body, the effects of the fierce blows which had been rained upon him.

Frank had conquered his goose without any mishap, but Sam had, in reaching out to seize hold of the one he was chasing, received such a blow on his elbow from a wing, that he fairly howled from the pain, and was not able to fire another shot during the rest of the day. It was news to the boys when the Indians told them that an old goose with one blow of his wing has been known to kill a large fox, or to break the leg of a man. So the lads, while delighted with the success of their first goose hunt, ever after had a much greater respect for the poor, despised goose than before.

With the veering of the wind, the decoys were changed so as to bring the geese again in the right direction in range of the guns, and the sport continued until evening. Then, after a hasty supper on

the rocks in the glorious gloaming that lasts for many hours in those high latitudes in the summer months, the canoes were loaded, and three very tired but happy boys, who wanted to paddle, went to sleep instead long ere the hospitable home of their host was reached.

The Indians are the kindest men in the world with whom to travel. Hardly knowing how it happened, the boys were carefully helped to their quarters in the Fort. Here, when their bruises were bathed, they ate their suppers, and said their prayers, and then there was the long nine hours' dreamless slumber, "Tired Nature's sweet restorer, balmy sleep."

When, next morning, the boys were discussing the, to them, glorious adventures of the two preceding days, it was agreed among them that the accidents and honours were about even. While Alec and Sam had had their laugh at Frank for his misadventure with the canoe, the tables were completely turned on them in the incidents of the goose-hunt.

## CHAPTER III

Writing Journals—Fur-laden Brigades—Valuable Furs—  
Hunting Preparations—Big Tom, the Famous Guide—  
The Start—First Camp on the Rocks.

SOON after breakfast and a glorious plunge bath in the cold waters of Hudson Bay, the lads were informed by Mr M'Tavish that the ship was now about unloaded, and that just as soon as the brigades, with the last winter's catch of furs, which were looked for every hour, arrived, she would with the first favourable wind begin the return voyage. He suggested that, instead of hunting that day, they should devote the hours to writing letters to their friends far away, as months would elapse ere another opportunity would be theirs. Of course this kind suggestion was readily acted upon, and in an unused office in one of the buildings, Frank, Alec and Sam were soon busily engaged in their epistolary work.

Before leaving home they had been furnished with regulation journals, and had been offered substantial rewards if they would write something in their books every day. Readily had they promised, but, alas! when the Atlantic storms had for some days assailed them, their good resolutions, though stimulated by the promised rewards, failed most signally. During the first few days after starting, they had so much to write about, and had so filled up the pages that they



KNOCKED OUT BY A GOOSE.

i  
i  
i  
l  
v  
v  
c  
t  
e  
t  
i  
e  
e  
i  
e  
v  
t  
f  
v

all regretted that their books were not larger, or that they had not three or four pages for each day. This, however, had all changed. The pages were now too large, and it was a burden to write even a few sentences.

We need not stop here to give any detailed accounts of these letters, suffice it to say they were just such as any of the bright, happy, boyish readers of these pages would have written, under similar circumstances, to their loved parents and friends far away. It was noticed that while they were full of fun and laughter while writing to their school chums, and other comrades, yet when they took in hand the letters to their mothers there was a quiet time, and some throats had lumps in them. All right, boys; we think none the less but much the more of you because of your love and affection for your mothers, between whom and you now rolls the wide Atlantic. Months will elapse ere letters from home will reach you, or you will have the opportunity of writing again, and so now, while you have the chance, send loving letters to the precious ones at home whose love excels all other earthly love. Frank, Alec and Sam all have, as you have, good mothers. They never gave bad advice, but always the best counsel. They never led the boys astray, but ever stimulated them to a noble life. They always loved, and were ever more anxious to forgive and forget than the boys were to be forgiven.

Great was the excitement and noise at the Fort next morning, and very early were the boys astir to see what was the cause. The long-expected brigades of boats had arrived with the cargoes. As the furs were all sorted in well-packed bales weighing

each about eighty or ninety pounds, the work of transferring them to the ship did not take very long. However, one boat in running some wild, dangerous rapids had been submerged, and nearly lost with all its crew, who escaped only because they could swim like otters. The cargo of fur had all gone under the waves, ere rescued, and it was necessary to open the bales, with which the boat had been loaded, and dry their contents in the bright sun as quickly as possible. This work much interested the boys, and as the assortment of furs was a varied one, they had their first opportunity of seeing what rich and valuable skins this wild country could produce.

There were no less than six varieties of foxes, the most valuable being the black and silver ones. Then there were cross foxes and blue foxes, as well as white and red ones. The rich otters and splendid black beavers greatly interested them, and especially the prime bear and wolf-skins. And as they looked at them and many other kinds, their mouths fairly watered at the prospect of being engaged, during the next few months, in the exciting sport of capturing the comrades of these in their native forests.

Yes, they would succeed in some instances, as our book will tell; but now, as they looked at these splendid skins lying so quiet and still, they little imagined the dangers and hardships which would be theirs ere the fierce bears and savage wolves they were to assail should render up their robes.

Very much interested also were they in the hardy voyageurs, or trip men, who manned these brigades. Dark and swarthy were they, with beardless

faces, and long, black hair that rested on their shoulders; from remote and different regions had they come; brigades from the Assiniboine, Red River, Cumberland and the Saskatchewan region. Many of the boatmen were of the Metis, half French and Indian, and they spoke a language that was a mixture of both, with some English intermixed that was not always the most polite.

From the mighty Saskatchewan had come down that great river for a thousand miles, and then onward for several hundreds more, brigades that had, in addition to the furs and robes, large supplies of dried meat and tallow of the country, and carried many bags of the famous food called pemmican, made from the flesh of the great herds of buffalo that in those days, like "the cattle on a thousand hills," thundered through the land, and grazed on its rich pasturage and drank from its beautiful streams. The men of these Saskatchewan brigades were warriors who had often been in conflict with hostile tribes, and could tell exciting stories of scalping parties, and the fierce conflict for their lives when beleaguered by some relentless foes. Some of them bore, on face or scalp, the marks of the wounds received in close tomahawk encounter, and for the gift of a pocket-knife or gaudy handkerchief from our eager boys, rehearsed, with all due enlargement, the story of the fierce encounter with superior numbers of their bitterest enemies, and how they had so gloriously triumphed, though not unscathed, as these great scars did testify.

Thus, excited and interested, the boys wandered from one encampment of these brigades to another. The word had gone out from the chief factor,



Mr M'Tavish, that they were his special friends, and as such were to be treated with consideration by all. This was quite sufficient to insure them a welcome everywhere, and they picked up no small amount of general information as they became acquainted with people from places of which they had heard but little, and from others which were until then to them unknown.

In addition to those already referred to, there were brigades from Lac-la Puie, the Lake of the Woods, Cumberland House, Athabasca and Swan River, and other places many hundreds of miles away.

Soon after their arrival each brigade formed its own encampment, separate from the others. Here the fires of dry logs were built on the ground, the meals prepared and eaten, and when the day's work was done the men gathered around the fire's bright glow, smoked their pipes, and laughed and chatted. Then each wrapped himself in a single blanket and lay down on the ground to sleep, with no roof above him but the stars.

As the goods brought from England in large bulk had to be made up into bundles, called in the language of the country "pieces," each weighing from eighty to one hundred pounds, so that they could be easily carried around the portages by the Indians, several days would elapse ere the return trip could be begun. Full of interest were these days to the boys, as from camp fire to camp fire they wandered, making friends everywhere with the Indians by their hearty, manly ways.

At first the wildest and fiercest-looking fellows most attracted them, those bold warriors who could tell of scalping parties and horse-stealing adventures

s, and  
y all.  
ecome  
nt of  
with  
but  
n to

here  
the  
wan  
ailes

its  
Here  
the  
ork  
ght  
ted.  
and  
ove

ulk  
an-  
om  
uld  
ns,  
uld  
he  
ed,  
by

vs  
ld  
es

r  
t  
e  
n  
ls  
ed  
nd  
ed  
in  
an  
ay  
al,  
en,  
ed,  
ho

ars,  
lon  
all  
our-  
the  
ood  
e to  
iefs  
far  
and

been  
afely  
His  
"O  
n on

ys to



BIG TOM.

among the warlike tribes of the great plains. After a while, however, they found themselves most interested in the brigades that could travel fastest, that had the record of making the longest trip in the shortest time. What at first was a surprise to them was that the brigades that held these best records were those of the Christian Indians, who spared time to say their prayers morning and evening, and always halted on Sunday. By this it was proved that those hard-working men who rested one day in seven could, and did do, better and faster work than those who knew no Sabbath, but pushed on from day to day without pause. Man, as a working animal, needs the day of rest, and with one off in seven, will, as has been here and in other places proved, do better work in the remaining six than he who takes no day of rest at all.

In three days after the arrival of the furs, which were estimated as being worth in London over three hundred thousand pounds, they were all safely stowed away in the vessel, and a favourable wind springing up from the south-west, the anchor was lifted, the sails hoisted, and the good ship *Prince Arthur* started on her return voyage to the Old Land. The boys waved their handkerchiefs and shouted their farewells until the vessel was far out on the dancing waves like a thing of life and beauty.

To Big Tom of the Norway House Brigade had been entrusted the responsibility of taking the boys safely from York Factory to the residence of Mr Ross. His Indian name was Mamanowatum, which means "O be joyful," but he had long been called Big Tom on account of his gigantic size.

Ample resources had been sent with the boys to

pay for all they might want. Mr M'Tavish got an experienced clerk to look after their outfit, and select for them everything needed, not only for the journey but for their requirements during the year of their stay. So they were furnished with what was called the yearly supplies, for which York Factory is the best place, keeping as it does large reserve stocks for all the interior trading posts. Their English boots were discarded for moccasins, and fringed leggings were manufactured out of well-tanned skins, and various other articles of apparel suitable to the wild country were obtained.

Two good Hudson Bay blankets were purchased for each boy, and as they had come to rough it, it was thought best to give them no tent, but each one had in his outfit a large piece of oiled canvas in case of a fierce rainstorm. They were given the usual rations of food, with tea and sugar, for so many days, and each lad was furnished with a copper kettle, a tin cup, a tin plate, a knife, fork and spoon. As for luxuries, they furnished themselves with towels, soap, brush and comb. In addition to these supplies for this first trip, there was sent up all that would be needed during the long months that they were to spend in the country.

The boys were specially anxious that the supply of ammunition should be most liberal. For weapons, they each had a good double-barrel breech-loading gun, then just beginning to come into use, which had been carefully selected for them ere they left home. In addition, they each had a first-class sheath knife, with hilt, good for close hand-to-hand encounters with animals, and also useful in skinning the game when killed or in cutting kindling

wood for a fire. A first-class knife is an indispensable requisite for a hunter in the North-West. Indeed, there is a saying in that country, "Give an Indian a knife and a string, and he will make his living and his way anywhere."

A brigade in the Hudson Bay service consisted of from four to twenty boats; each boat was supposed to carry from eighty to a hundred pieces of goods, or bales of fur, in addition to the supplies for the men. They were made out of spruce or balsam, and were, like large skiffs, sharp at both ends.

Each was manned by nine men. The man in charge was called the steersman. Standing in the sharp angle of the stern, he steered the boat either by a rudder or a long oar, which he handled with great skill. The other eight men rowed the boat along with great oars, in the use of which they were very clever. Each boat was provided with a small mast and a large, square sail. When there was no favourable wind the mast was unstepped, and lashed on to the side of the boat under the row-locks. Often for days together only the oars were used. This was specially the case in river routes. However, in the great lakes, whenever there was any possibility of sailing, the mast was stepped, the sail hoisted, and the weary toilers at the oars had a welcome rest, and often did they need it, for the work was most heavy and exhausting.

In each brigade there was a boss who had control of all the boats. He gave the word when to start in the morning and when to camp at night. His word was absolute in all matters of dispute. He had the privilege of selecting the best boat in the brigade, and was supposed to be always at the front. When dangerous rapids had to be run, or death in any form

had to be risked, in storm or hurricane, his boat had to be the first to face the trying ordeal, and his hand to be always on the helm. Only the well-tried steersman of many years' experience could hope to reach to this position, and when once it was attained, unceasing vigilance was the price paid for the retention of the post. One mistake in running the rapids or a single neglect to detect the coming of the storm in time to get to shore, and securely cover over the furs with the heavy tarpaulins, with which each boat was supplied, was quite sufficient to cause him to lose the much-coveted position. About the only liberty taken with him was when the boats, with each big sail set, were crossing a great lake to try if possible, by superior management, to get to the distant shore ahead of him.

The start was made about three o'clock in the afternoon, as is the general custom of these brigades of boats. The idea is only to go a few miles for the first day and thus find out if everything is in thorough working order, and that nothing has been forgotten.

The camp was made on the bank of the river where dry wood was abundant, and where there was some sheltered cove or harbour in which the boats could be secured in case of violent storms coming up in the night; not an unfrequent occurrence.

Big Tom appointed one of the Indian oarsmen to look after the boys. His duties were to cook their meals, select for their beds as smooth and soft a place as it was possible to find on the granite rocks, or, if it happened to be a soft and swampy place where the boats stopped for the night, he was expected to forage round and find some dry old grass in the used-up beaver meadows, or to cut down some balsam boughs

on which the oil-cloth would be spread and then their blanket beds would be made. These boughs of the balsam or spruce, when broken up, make a capital couch. The boys, after a few nights' experiments with various kinds of beds, became so much attached to those made of the spruce or balsam that unless very weary with some exciting sport during the day, they generally took upon themselves the work of securing them at each night's camping place.

Tables were considered unnecessary luxuries. The dishes were arranged on a smooth rock, if one were to be found. The food was served up by the Indian attendant, and the three boys and Big Tom sat down and enjoyed the plain but hearty meal. It is generally the custom for the commodore of the brigade to take his meals with any travellers he may have in charge. When they have dined, the Indian servant or attendant sits down and has his meal. After supper, the Indians who had more quickly prepared and eaten their suppers, as they waste but little time in details, gathered round the splendid camp fire, and for an hour or so engaged in pleasant chat, and while having their evening smoke showed to each other their various purchases secured at York Factory. At this post they are allowed to take up in goods half of the wages due for their services, and they carry these along with them in their boats.

After a final visit by the different steersmen to their boats to see that everything was snug and tight, and a consultation with Big Tom as to the likelihood of a storm coming up, they all gathered round the camp fire for evening prayers. Big Tom took charge of the evening service. He first read from his Testament, translated into his own Indian language and printed in the clear, beautiful syllabic characters in-



vented by one of the early missionaries. After the Scriptures were read, Martin Papanekis, a sweet singer, led the company in singing, in their own language, a beautiful translation of the evening hymn. Then they all reverently bowed their heads while Big Tom offered up an appropriate prayer.

Very sweetly sounded the voices of these Christian Indians as here, amidst Nature's solitudes, arose from their lips and hearts the voice of prayer and praise. The effect on the boys was not only startling but helpful. In their minds there had been associated very little of genuine Christianity with the Indians; indeed just the reverse. They expected to meet them with tomahawks and scalping-knives, but not with Bibles and hymn-books; they expected to hear war-whoops, but not the voice of Christian song and earnest prayer.

As the boys lay that night in their blanket beds on the rocks, they could not but talk of the evening prayers, and perhaps that simple but impressive service did more to bring vividly and helpfully before them the memories of their happy Christian homes far away than anything else that had occurred since they left them.

## CHAPTER IV

An Early Call—The Picturesque Route—The Toilsome Portage.—Rival Brigades—First Bear—Alec's Successful Shot.

So excited were the boys with their strange, romantic surroundings that, the first night they lay down in their beds thus prepared, not far from the camp fire on the rocks, they could hardly sleep. It was indeed a new experience to be able to look up and see the stars shining in the heavens above them. Then, when they looked around, on one side they saw the Indians reclining in picturesque attitudes, smoking their pipes and engaged in quiet talk. When they turned and looked on the other side, there was the dense, dark forest, peopled, in their young imaginations, with all sorts of creatures, from the fierce wolf and savage bear to the noisy "whisky Jack," a pert, saucy bird, about the size and colour of a turtle dove, that haunts the camp fires, and, with any amount of assurance, helps himself to pemmican and other articles of food if a bag is left open or the provisions are exposed to his keen eye. Still sounding in their ears were his strange, querulous notes, forming not half so sweet a lullaby as the music of the waves that beat and broke, a few yards from where they lay, on the pebbly shore.

But "tired Nature's sweet restorer, balmy sleep," came after a time and in dreamless slumber were

they wrapped, nor did they stir until, early next morning, they were aroused by the musical voice of Big Tom, from whom rang out the boatman's well-known call,—

“Lève, Lève, Lève!”

This is not Indian, but French, and has been taken by the Indians from the early French voyageurs who, long years before, used to traverse many parts of these wild regions to trade with the Indians. Quite a number of names still remain in the country as relics of these hardy, early French explorers. The real Indian call is, “Koos-Koos-Kah!”

This ringing call met with a prompt response from all. No one dared to remain for another nap. At once all was hurry and activity. The fires were quickly re-kindled, copper tea-kettles speedily filled and boiled, a hasty breakfast eaten, prayers offered, and then, “All aboard!” is the cry of Big Tom. The kettles, blankets and all the other things used are hastily stowed away, and the journey is resumed.

If the wind is fair, the sail is hoisted, and merrily they travel on. If not, the heavy oars are brought out, and, as they rise and fall in unison, the boats are propelled at the rate of about six miles an hour. Three or four times a day the travellers go ashore and boil the kettles and have a meal, for the air of that land is bracing and the appetites are always good.

The route used for so many years by the Hudson Bay Company to transport their goods into the interior from York Factory is utterly unfit for navigation, as we understand that word. The rivers are full of wild, dangerous rapids and falls. Some of these rapids can be run at all times during the

summer, others only when the water is high. Many of them are utterly impassable at any time. The result is that numerous portages have to be made by the boats and cargoes. As the making of a portage was exceedingly interesting to our boys, we will here describe one.

The boats were rowed up against the current as far as possible and then headed for the shore. There, at the landing-place, they were brought in close to the rocks, and every "piece" of cargo was taken out. These "pieces" were put on the men's shoulders, one piece, generally marked H. B., being fastened at both sides by a carrying strap, which in the middle is drawn across the bearer's forehead. Upon this first piece thus fastened, one or two more pieces are piled, and the Indian starts with this heavy load along the rough and rocky trail to the end of the portage. This end is the place beyond the rapids where safe navigation again commences. In quick succession the men are thus loaded, until all the cargoes are transported from one side to the other.

The boys were very eager to help, so they quickly loaded themselves with their guns and blankets, and, striking out into the trail, along which they saw the Indians were hurrying, they bravely endeavoured to keep in sight those who had started just before them. To their great surprise they found this to be an utter impossibility. The swinging jog-trot of an Indian does not seem to be a very rapid pace, but the white man, unaccustomed to it, finds out very quickly that it takes long practice for him to equal it. At first the boys thought that it was because they had loaded themselves too heavily, and they quite willingly took a rest on the way, dropped their blankets and guns, and, sitting down on a rock beside the trail,

watched with admiration the Indians speeding along in single file with their heavy loads. Many of these men can carry on each trip three pieces—that is a load of from two hundred and forty to three hundred pounds.

As Ayetum, the Indian who had charge of the white boys' cooking arrangements, was passing them while they sat there in the portage, he said in broken English:

"White boys leave guns and blankets; Ayetum come for them soon."

This was quite agreeable to the tired lads, and they started up again, Frank saying as they did so,—

"Now we will show them that we can keep up to them."

Gallantly they struck out, but to a white boy, running over an Indian trail, where rocks and fallen trees and various other obstructions abound, is a very different thing from on a smooth road in a civilised land. For a time they did well, but, when hurrying along on a narrow ledge of rock, an unnoticed creeping root tripped Sam up and sent him flying over the side of a steep place, where he went floundering down twenty or thirty feet among the bracken and underbrush. Fortunately, he was not much hurt, but it needed the assistance of two Indians to get him up again.

Thus rapidly passed the days as the brigade hurried on. Not an hour was wasted. It was necessary to move on as quickly as possible, as not twenty-four hours would elapse ere the next brigade would be dispatched from York factory; and not only would it be a great disgrace to be overtaken, but the rivalry and strife of the boats' crews in the portages, in their efforts to see which could get their cargoes over first,

ong  
ese  
s a  
red  
the  
em  
ken  
um  
and  
o,—  
to  
un-  
llen  
ery  
sed  
ing  
ing  
side  
wn  
er-  
it  
up  
ied  
to  
our  
is-  
be  
nd  
eir  
rst,



MAKING A PORTAGE.

38

w  
in  
m  
lo  
po

w  
w  
Er

co

th

th

ni  
tr  
di  
la  
al  
ro  
of  
tw  
br  
ne  
ag

on  
m  
ho  
pa  
a  
st  
eff

would be most intense. Sometimes there is bad blood and quarrelling, especially if the brigades happen to be of rival tribes.

Hence, it was ever the plan of the great Company, that employed them all, to keep them at least a day or two apart, on these adventurous and exciting journeys. To Big Tom and his men had been given the post of honour, and it was well known that such was his skill as a leader, and so well was he backed up by his well-trained, stalwart men, that, unless some great accident happened, no brigade following would have any chance of catching up to him ere his journey was finished.

One day, when passing through a lake-like expansion of the river, they saw a large black bear swimming as fast as he could, directly ahead of them. Suddenly, the cry was raised—

“A bear! a bear!”

The men bent to their oars, and there was an exciting chase.

Fortunately for the pursuers, it was a wide, open space, and the bear was far out from land. Even in these heavy boats, the men can row faster than a bear can swim, and so the chase began. Knowing well the habits of the bear, the men's first efforts were to cut him off from the mainland, and thus oblige him to swim for one of the many islands which could be seen on ahead. If they could succeed in this he would have a poor chance, as the boats would speedily surround him there. Bears know that they are not safe on islands, when hunted, and so cunningly endeavour to keep from them. If so unfortunate as to be obliged to take refuge on one, when closely pursued, they do not seem able to keep quiet or try to lie hidden and unseen, but just as



soon as possible they make the attempt to reach the mainland, and there hide themselves away from their pursuers, in the dense forest or underbrush. This peculiarity of the bear is well known to the Indian hunters, so, in this case, the first object of the men, as they would hardly be able to get near enough to this big fellow to shoot him in the water, was to head him off from the mainland, and thus force him on an island. In this they succeeded as they desired.

Frank, Alec, and Sam were intensely excited, as the chase advanced. In their zoological gardens they had often seen and watched various species of bears. There they were in captivity, and could do no harm. Here, however, away ahead of them, like a great Newfoundland dog, was this big, fierce fellow, wild and free, making the race of his life to escape from his relentless pursuers.

At first he struck out for the mainland and made the most desperate efforts to reach the shore; but when at length he saw one of the boats surely crawling along, so that it would soon be between him and the point of land towards which he was swimming, he accepted the situation, and struck off for a large island that seemed to be densely covered with trees and underbrush.

Nearer and nearer came the boats, propelled so vigorously by the muscular men, whose great oars rose and fell with all the precision of clock-work, and who were pleased as they saw they were gaining on their prey.

Big Tom's boat was at the front, and he said to the excited boys, who could hardly restrain themselves:

"You boys want to shoot him?"

Of course they did. What boy, under similar

circumstances, would not have given almost anything for a shot at a bear in a position like this?

So the guns were quickly loaded, and, under Tom's direction, the boys were given a position, one after another, in the stem of the boat. Grandly did the men row so as to bring the bear within range ere the island should be reached. When the bear was about two hundred feet from shore, Tom, who had had some difficulty in restraining the boys from firing, now ordered the men to cease rowing, and, as had been arranged with the boys, he gave the word to Sam to fire. Quickly rang out the report of his gun.

"Did you hit him?" said Big Tom.

"I think I did," was Sam's odd reply, "for see, he is swimming faster than he did before I fired."

This quaint answer was met by shouts of laughter from all who understood its comical meaning.

"Now, Frank, it is your turn," said Big Tom.

Carefully aiming for his head, and, really, there was not much of it to be seen, for a bear swims low in the water, Frank fired, and a howl and a vigorous shaking of the head told that he had been hit somewhere, but not enough to stop his progress. The boat, under the momentum it had received from the oars, was still moving on about as fast as the bear was able to swim.

"Now, Alec," said Big Tom, as the lad took his position in the stem of the boat, "when he tries to run through the shallow water near those rocks your turn comes. Hit him behind the shoulder, good young Scotchman."

At the kindly mention of his nationality the blood of Alec suddenly rose, and he felt his hand grip that gun, and his eye strangely brighten; and he resolved, if possible, he would make the shot of his life.

Steadying himself, he waited until the bear was exactly in the place and position mentioned by the experienced old hunter, who stood behind him. Then he fired. As the report rang out, there was also heard the dull thud that told that somewhere the fierce brute had been struck, but, to Alec's mortification, he gave some desperate bounds, and finally reached the shore. There, among the rocks, he suddenly dropped as in a heap. A few seconds after, some of the Indians, with their guns, jumped overboard and cautiously waded towards him through the shallow water. Their caution, however, was altogether unnecessary. Alec's bullet had done its work, and the bear was stone dead. The Indians found, when cutting up the body, that the ball had gone completely through him. The wonder was, that the great brute had been able to move at all after being so struck. But bears have an immense amount of vitality, as hunters who shoot them often find out to their own cost. So here was the first bear killed, and Alec was the hero of the hour. While modestly he received the congratulations, he naturally felt very proud over the accuracy of the shot that had brought down a great black bear.

Speedily did some of the Indian hunters get out their knives and begin skinning the great animal. While doing this they made a discovery that very much pleased Frank, and that was that his bullet had gone clean through the ear of the bear, and had thus caused those howls and the angry shakings of his head which had been observed by all after Frank had fired. As a bear's head is very small, Frank's shot was an exceedingly good one, when we take into consideration that he fired from a moving boat and at some distance.

"First blood, anyway for Frank," said Alec.

So it had turned out to be, although Alec's had been the shot that had brought down the game.

The beautiful black robe and the meat were soon carried by the stalwart men to the boats, and the journey resumed. That evening at the camp fire all had abundance of bear's meat for their supper. It was very much enjoyed, for the meat of these animals is good, tasting something like young pork with a gamey flavour.

## CHAPTER V

Robinson's Portage—Gunpowder Transportation—Hole in the Keg—A Frightful Explosion—Ensconced at Headquarters—Delightful Home in the Wilderness—Sturgeon Fishing—Involuntary Plunges.

AT Robinson's Portage there occurred a startling accident of quite a unique character. It caused much consternation both among the boys and the Indians.

In one of the boats, most carefully guarded, were a number of barrels of gunpowder for the different trading posts. Large quantities of this dangerous material are required for the Indians all over the country. The Company is very particular in its transportation, and only the most experienced men are allowed to have charge of the powder boat.

When the brigade reached Robinson's Portage, which is a long one, the men who had charge of the powder carefully rolled or dragged the barrels across the portage, which has over its whole length a fairly good forest road. The rest of the men with their carrying straps conveyed as usual the many pieces and piled them close to the landing-stage. Three boat-loads of supplies as well as the cargo of

gunpowder had been taken across and piled up ready for re-shipment. Before bringing over the other cargoes and dragging the great boats, which were as usual to be hauled overland by the united strength of all the men, it was resolved to have dinner at the place where they had landed, and then go on with their work. Wood was gathered, a fire kindled and dinner prepared.

While the men were at dinner it was noticed that the fire had spread, and had reached the place in the dry grass where the powder kegs had been placed when they had been taken out of the boats, and before they had been carried to the other end of the portage. Soon the Indians and boys were interested in seeing a fuse-like running of fire, spluttering and flashing as it hurried on and on along the road, until at length it disappeared over the hill leading to the other end of the portage where the barrels of powder and bales of goods were now piled. For a moment or two the men continued their dinners; then suddenly there was a report so loud and deafening that those who were standing were nearly thrown to the ground, and all were so shaken that it seemed as though a small earthquake had occurred.

In an instant the cause was surmised, and away they hurried as rapidly as possible to the other end of the portage. A strange sight, indeed, met their gaze. Some of the trees were badly shattered, and parts of those left standing, instead of being covered with green foliage, were decorated with coloured calicoes, ribbons, tattered blankets, men's clothing and many other things. The well-piled-up bundles and pieces had disappeared, and the contents seemed to be anywhere within the

radius of half a mile. A large quantity had been blown out into the river and had gone floating down the stream.

Where the piles of powder kegs had stood there was an excavation in the ground, but, alas! no powder was left. All had gone to cause the great explosion that had seemed so like an earthquake. Of course Big Tom and his men were a humiliated lot, for there is a great deal of ambition among these hardy boatmen to deliver their cargoes in as good condition to the Hudson Bay Company's officials as possible. But here *was* a disaster. Three boat-loads of supplies, as well as a cargo of gunpowder, were annihilated, or nearly so.

Quickly did they set to work to secure what was in the water, but that was now of little value. Some of the most adventurous climbed the high trees and managed to pull off a few of the garments there securely lodged, but much was beyond their reach, and for several years these articles fluttered in the winds of winter and of summer, and vividly reminded all who passed of that singular disaster.

And how had it come about?

This was easily found out. One of the powder barrels had a little unnoticed hole in it, and from this had silted out a tiny little stream of powder all along the whole length of the portage. When the fire was kindled, at the other end where the dinner was cooked, it spread to the beginning of this strangely-laid fuse, which in running along had so interested those who had seen it at the commencement, but who had had no idea of there being any danger in it, or of the damage it would inflict upon the supplies.

"Well," said Big Tom, in his quiet way, "I am

sorry for John Company to lose so much property, but he is rich and it will not hurt him. I am glad we did not, as is our general way—come over here and have our dinner near our loads. If we had done so, perhaps some of our arms or legs might be now hanging up there in the branches where those red calicoes and other things are."

So, while all regretted the great misfortune, they were very thankful that there had been no loss of life or limb. With a will they set to work, and soon the other cargoes were carried over, and the boats were dragged across by the united crews, quickly launched and re-loaded, some with only half cargoes on account of the disaster, and then the journey was resumed.

How Big Tom explained the story of the explosion to the Hudson Bay officials, and what were their answers, we know not; suffice it to say Big Tom was very glum for some time after, and was not anxious to have many questions put to him in reference to the interview.

To the residence of Mr Ross the boys were escorted by a party of the Forts' clerks, after they had dined at Norway House. All their outfit, which fortunately, like themselves, had escaped the explosion, was brought over a few hours later by some of the servants of the Company.

The hearty welcome which the boys received from Mr Ross and his family at Sagastaweekee we have already mentioned.

During the evening the chief factor and some of the other officials of the Fort, who had had advices of the coming of our three young gentlemen, Frank, Alec and Sam, came over to meet them. They most cordially welcomed them to the country, stating at



the same time that they had received, *via* Montreal and Fort Garry, advance letters in reference to them, and would gladly carry out the instructions contained, and do all they could to make the year's sojourn as pleasant and interesting as possible.

This was good news to the boys, and also to Mr Ross, who, now that he was no longer actively in the employ of the Company, was a little nervous about the reception which would be accorded to these young hunters, who had come into the country at his personal invitation.

Strange as it may now appear, it is a well-known fact that this great fur-trading Company looked with jealous eye upon any persons coming into these territories, unless they came on the Company's own exclusive invitation, and kept themselves completely under the Company's direction and guidance. However, the old despotic rules were being relaxed, and in the case of our boys, thoughtful friends at home, who had influence with the London directors, had so arranged matters that everything favoured their having a delightful time.

That they had it these pages will surely testify.

As we have stated, very cordially were they received and welcomed by their host, whose home was on the mighty Nelson River, a few miles away from Norway House Fort. This great establishment of the Hudson Bay Company was for many years the great distributing centre for the supplies sent out from England to the many smaller posts throughout the country. The houses were very substantially built of hewn logs, boarded over and painted white. They occupied the four sides of a hollow square, room only being left for two or three massive gateways. The interior was, during

the summer months, kept beautifully green, and was the favourite resort alike of the Company's officials, employees and servants, and their white and Indian visitors.

The relations between Mr Ross and the officials from this large establishment were most cordial; visits were frequently interchanged, and the boys were always welcome guests.

The house which Mr Ross had built was as good as the materials of the country afforded. The walls were of squared logs, the interstices between them being made as nearly frost-tight as possible. The outsides were well boarded and so was the interior. As there is no limestone in that part of the country, the partitions dividing the rooms were all made of timber.

In the fall of the year, ere the ground froze hard, the house was banked up to the lower edges of the windows. Double sashes were placed in every window. As there is no coal to be had, wood is used altogether in its place. Great iron stoves are employed, in which roaring fires are kept burning continuously from October until May. In this genuine native house the three boys soon settled down and felt themselves to be as members of its delightful family.

Shortly after their arrival there were eager conversations as to the various excursions that could be made, and the different hunting expeditions that would be possible. While they expected to have some good times hunting the bears, beavers, wolves, reindeer and other animals that were within easy reach of their present headquarters, they were also ambitious enough to hope that they would be able to get to the haunts of the buffalo on the

great western prairies, of the musk ox in the far north, and even of the grizzly bear in the mountain ravines.

In the meantime they had much to interest and amuse themselves with in studying the habits and customs of the Indians who were constantly coming to see Mr Ross, who was a universal favourite, and the wise counsellor and adviser of all in trouble or perplexity. With the twelve or fifteen splendid dogs which he owned they soon became fast friends, and had many a run, either in the forests or along the shores of the great water stretches that were near. Each boy soon had his favourite dog, and naturally did all he could to develop its intelligence and bring out all its latent sagacity. While in a measure they succeeded, they also found, in some instances, that in some dogs downright mischief and trickery could be as easily developed as the more noble qualities.

The canoes, of course, were tackled, and after a few laughable upsets they quickly became experts in their use, and had many a glorious trip and many an exciting adventure. Often did they go, in the company of their host and some experienced Indians, to the place still retaining the name of the Old Fort, although the buildings were destroyed long ago. There the accumulated waters of some scores of rivers that pour into Lake Winnipeg rush out in one great volume to form the mighty Nelson River.

In this picturesque region, rich in Indian legends, and the resort of various kinds of game and a favourite spot for fishermen, many happy days were spent by our young friends in fishing and hunting. Then, when wearied with the varied sport, delightful hours

were passed away as, gathered round the bright, blazing camp fires, they listened to tales of bygone days and stories of adventure told by white or Indian.

These excursions often lasted for a number of days at a time. So the party, which sometimes consisted of from eight to a dozen persons, carried with them in their canoes not only their guns and ammunition, but their kettles, food supplies and blankets. When the day's hunting was ended, the supper was cooked at a fire made on the rocks, its principal item being usually some of the game just shot or fish just caught.

As the boys' dexterity in the use of the canoes increased, they became more adventurous in their excursions, and one day, in company with experienced Indians, they struck out from the Old Fort, and went as far as to the mouth of the great Saskatchewan River. The long trip across the north-western end of Lake Winnipeg was most exhilarating. Up to that time they had no idea that birch canoes could ride in safety such enormous waves, or be propelled along continuously with such rapidity.

They camped on the shores of the great river, near the foot of the rapids, the only ones to be found in it for a thousand miles. Here they cooked their evening meal and lay down to sleep. The music of the rapids was a pleasant lullaby that soothed them into refreshing slumber.

Early next morning they were visited by a number of friendly Indians, who informed them that the sturgeon were very numerous at the foot of the rapids, and that excellent sport could be had in killing some of them.

While the usual method of capturing the sturgeon

is with large gil-nets, a more exciting way is by spearing them below the rapids, where at times they gather in large numbers, or by shooting them as they spring into the air. To spear a large sturgeon from a birch canoe, and not get an upset, is a difficult matter. For a time the Indians alone did the spearing, but after the boys had watched them at it, they imagined that it was not such a very difficult affair after all, and so asked to be allowed to try for themselves. The Indians at first hesitated, as they well knew how difficult it really was, and thought that the boys had better keep at the safer sport of trying to shoot those that sprang, porpoise-like, out of the water. This itself afforded great amusement, but, while exciting, was not very successful, as it is extremely difficult to hit a sturgeon with gunshot, so rapid are its movements.

The boys had done fairly well, and as the great fish—from five to eight feet long—floated down the rapid current when shot, some old Indian men and women, on the look-out in their canoes, were made the richer and happier by being allowed to take possession of the spoil. This was the thought ever in the minds of the boys—that, whenever possible, no matter what they caught in the waters or shot in the forests or elsewhere, if they could not use it all themselves, to have it reach some old or feeble Indians who would be thankful for the gifts thus bestowed. This kindly feeling was most commendable, and everywhere secured them the goodwill of the Indians, never jealous of those who, visiting their lands merely for sport and adventure, do not kill the animals simply for the love of

killing, but are also desirous that somebody may be benefited by having for their use what is thus slaughtered.

But the boys were still anxious for an opportunity of trying their skill in spearing, and at length they induced the Indians to let them make the attempt, even if it should not be very successful.

To be ready for any emergency, the cautious Indians arranged their canoes so that if an accident should occur to these adventurous lads, they could prevent anything taking place more serious than a good ducking. In this method of capturing the sturgeon, the one using the spear takes his position in the front of the canoe, while the others noiselessly paddle the boat against the current to the spot where sturgeon are seen to be quietly resting or rooting in the gravelly bottom of the shallow places in the current.

Alec was the first to make the attempt at this new and rather uncertain sport. In a good canoe, manned by a couple of skilled Indians, he took his position in the bow, and with a good, strong fishing-spear in his hands he steadied himself carefully in the cranky boat, while the men silently paddled him to a spot where the occasional appearance of part of a sturgeon above the water betrayed its presence. The sun, shining gloriously, made the day very delightful, but its very brightness was the cause of Alec's discomfiture.

Nothing more quickly disturbs a sturgeon than a sudden shadow thrown on the water. Alec, not knowing this, was being quietly paddled against the current, thus facing towards the west. It was now about noon, and the bright sun was on his left. In this position he ought only to have attempted

to spear the fish on the left side of his canoe, where he would have thrown no shadow. Ignorant of this, as soon as he observed a large sturgeon not far ahead, he quietly indicated by signs to the canoemen which way he wished them to paddle so as to bring him close enough to spear the fish. The men, not being able to see the sturgeon from their positions, paddled as directed, and Alec was brought close enough to make the attempt. The sturgeon seemed to be an enormous one, and Alec, knowing that only a most desperate lunge would enable him to drive the spear through the thick hide of the fish, now just a little before him on the right, made the attempt with all the strength that he could muster.

But, alas! how different the result from what was expected! As Alec threw himself forward to plunge the sharp spear into the body of the fish, he found that it met with no firmer substance than the water, and instead of the spear being buried in the body of the fish, the momentum of his great effort threw him out of the boat, and down he went head first into the river. Fortunately, the water was not deep, and as the other canoes were not far behind, he was soon pulled into one of them, a bit frightened, but none the worse for his involuntary plunge.

Nothing daunted, Sam was the next to volunteer to try his skill, and on being informed that Alec's trouble was that he had raised his arm with the spear so as to cast a shadow which had frightened the fish, he resolved not to make a similar mistake. Taking his position as directed in the front of the canoe, his men paddled him where he would be able to strike the fish without casting his shadow. Soon the appearance of the fins of a great sturgeon were seen,



here  
his,  
far  
men  
ring  
not  
ons,  
lose  
med  
only  
rive  
fish,  
made  
ould

was  
ange  
und  
ater,  
y of  
him  
the  
l as  
oon  
the

teer  
ec's  
ear  
ish,  
ing  
his  
ike  
ap-  
en,



SPEARING STURGEON.





and noiselessly the Indians paddled Sam's canoe close up to it. He was resolved if possible to succeed where Alec had signally failed. When close enough to the large fish, which seemed to be utterly unconscious of the canoe's presence, Sam, taking the spear in both hands, plunged it well and true into the body of the great sturgeon, that up to that instant seemed to have been sound asleep. But there was a great awakening when it felt that spear-thrust. Giving a great spring, so strong and sudden that it seemed fairly to lift Sam, spear and all, out of the canoe, it started for the great lake. Sam let go the spear when he found himself being dragged over the side of the boat, but the Indians afterwards declared that he hung on for some time and had a ride on the back of the great fish.

Like Alec had been before him, he was quickly picked up and pulled into another canoe.

The Indians imagined that now that two of the boys had come to grief, the third would not wish to attempt this risky sport. But these lads were not easily daunted, and, without any hesitancy, Frank asked to be allowed to see what he could do. He had this advantage, that he had observed what had caused Alec and Sam to fail in their attempts. Arming himself with a sharp spear, he took the position assigned to him, and was paddled up to a place where the fish were numerous. The spear that he had selected, instead of being one of the three-pronged variety, was more of a chisel-shape, and exceedingly sharp. With this in his hands, he firmly braced himself in the narrow front of the canoe, while the now intensely-interested company watched his efforts. Some sturgeon were observed very near, but Frank, even in the excitement of the

moment, was not to be diverted from his resolve. He bade the Indians paddle him on and on, until they brought him close to an enormous fellow lying quiet and still on the gravelly bottom.

Then with all his strength Frank struck a blow, so quick and strong that the first intimation of danger to the fish was the sharp spear crashing through the strong, bony scales, through flesh and vertebræ into the spinal cord, just behind the head. So instantaneous was death under this fatal stroke, that there was not even the usual spasmodic spring. Like as a log might have lain on the water, so did the great fish. Its only movement was, as in the case with most large fish thus killed, to roll over and at once begin to float away on the current.

"Well done, Frank!" shouted the dripping boys who pluckily had refused to be taken ashore until Frank had made the attempt in which he had so well succeeded. The Indians were delighted, and, in their way, were quite demonstrative, and for long after at many a camp fire the story of that strong, true, successful spear-thrust had to be described and acted out.

Thoroughly satisfied with these first experiments at sturgeon-fishing the party went ashore, and at a large camp fire, Alec and Sam dried their garments as well as possible. Changes, of course, they had not on such an excursion. However, they suffered but little inconvenience, and no bad results followed from their immersions.

They spent another day or two at the mouth of this great Saskatchewan River, and in the canoes of some of the experienced Indians who there reside, they, several times, ran the rapids. This was wild

and exhilarating sport, and was vastly enjoyed. During the return trip, nothing of very great importance occurred. They shot a number of wild ducks as they paddled along, and in due time they reached Sagastaweekee, tired and bronzed, and full of the adventures of their first outing from the home of their kind host.

## CHAPTER VI

Indian Implements—Canoeing Excursion—Gunpowder *versus*  
Jack-fish—Loon Shooting—Sam's Successful Shot.

THE Indians were originally very skilful in the manufacture of the few articles that were absolutely necessary for their use. The style and curves of their graceful canoes, although only made of the bark of the birch tree, and strengthened by supple bands of cedar or balsam, and made watertight by the gum of the pine or other resinous trees, have never been improved in any modern boat-builder's yard. True, fancy canoes are being turned out for the pleasure and enjoyment of canoeists in safe waters, but whenever the experiment has been tried of using such canoes in the dangerous rivers of the Indian country they are found to be not at all equal to those manufactured by the natives. In the manufacture of their paddles, and in the spring and lightness of their oars, they have never been surpassed, and many a skilful white artisan has had to admit that, after all his efforts to imitate it, there was a something of completeness and exact fitness for the work required about the Indian's production that was somehow lacking in his own handiwork.

To the Indian women and clever old men were left the duties of making the canoes. Our boys were very much interested in watching them at the

work, but were naturally annoyed at the spasmodic way in which they carried on their operations, as while perhaps for some days they would work incessantly from early dawn to dark, they would then lay off for days and do nothing but lounge around and smoke.

As the weeks rolled on, and the boys became more and more acquainted with the natives, and acclimated and accustomed to the new methods of travel, a more ambitious trip for their pleasure was arranged by Mr Ross.

It was decided to go to the Old Fort, and after shooting and fishing there in the vicinity of the place previously visited, to push on to Spider Islands, and after a short stay in order to enjoy the beauties of that romantic place, to push on across the north-eastern part of the great Lake Winnipeg to Montreal Point, and there to hunt along the coast as far south as Poplar Point, if the sport was good and the necessary supplies of ammunition and other essentials held out. The boys were wild with delight at the prospect, and were anxious to do all in their power to expedite the undertaking.

The Indians of all these regions do not now give much prominence to the old picturesque style of dress with which we have formerly been so familiar. Feathers and paints are now quite out of date, still their coats, pants, leggings and moccasins are principally made of the beautifully-tanned skins of the moose and reindeer, and handsomely ornamented with bead work, at which the Cree women are most skilful. Of course Frank, Alec and Sam were speedily fitted out in the dress of the country, and were quite proud of their appearance. They were also very anxious to

have the natives give them Indian names, as is quite customary. The Indians, however, after some consideration, in which a large quantity of tobacco was smoked, decided that as the boys were to remain for a time in the country, they had better wait for the development of their special peculiarities, or until some great event occurred that would suggest appropriate names. While disappointed with this decision, the boys had to rest content.

At first they found the use of the soft, pliable moccasin very strange after the heavy boots of civilisation, and for a little while complained of a soreness in the soles of their feet. These, however, soon hardened, and then they much preferred the soft Indian shoes to all others.

On the contemplated trip, Mr Ross decided that, in addition to some younger Indians, he would take with him two old, experienced men, who were perhaps the most famous hunters of their tribe. One of these was our old friend Big Tom, the other was called Mustagan. He was almost as large as Big Tom, and had a wonderful record. We shall hear much about him as these pages advance, and will be delighted to have him with us in many an exciting hour.

Three canoes were employed on this excursion. Mr Ross had Mustagan, two Indians, and one of the boys with him, while the other two canoes, which were not quite so large as his, had in each, one of the boys and two Indians to paddle them. So when the party started, it consisted of ten persons. Everyone was well supplied with guns and ammunition. The guns used were the muzzle-loaders of the country, as, after some experiment with breech-loaders, there was found to be a good deal of difficulty in reference to the supplies of cartridges.

The usual camping outfit, and necessities for a month's outing, were also taken along with them.

While passing through Play Green Lake they amused themselves one day by catching some very large jackfish or pike in the usual Indian fashion. It seemed very surprising that the mere concussion of the air, caused by the firing of blank charges of gunpowder, could stun or paralyze such enormous fish.

As they journeyed on, a quiet "Hush" from Mus-tagan caused them to look toward the shore, and there, not far up from the sandy beach, were to be



YOUNG DEER ON THE SHORE.

seen four beautiful young deer. Mr Ross was anxious to get on, and nothing special was to be gained by hunting these beautiful young creatures, so they were not even disturbed or frightened. The boys watched them for some time and were delighted with their graceful movements, as like young lambs they gambolled on the shore. Genuine sport is not the useless butchery of inoffensive creatures.

They had some rare sport in trying to shoot the great northern diver, called in this country the loon.



It is a bird as large and heavy as the wild goose. Its feathers are so thick and close that they easily turn aside ordinary shot. Its bill is long and sharp, and with it, in battle, it can inflict a most ugly wound. The feathers on its breast are of snowy whiteness, while on the rest of the body they are of a dark brown colour, approaching to black, flecked with white. Its peculiar legs are wide and thin; its webbed feet are so large that it can swim with amazing rapidity. On land it is a very awkward and ungainly bird, and can hardly move along, but in the water it is a thing of beauty. It has a strange, mournful cry, and seems to utter its melancholy notes more frequently before an approaching storm than at any other time. The Indians, who are most excellent judges of the weather, and quick to notice any change, have great confidence in the varied cries of the loon. It is a marvellous diver, having, perhaps, in this no equal, and when pursued, is able to swim great distances under water with amazing rapidity, only coming up to breathe for an instant at long intervals.

The loon is very hard to kill. A chance long-distance bullet, or a shot in the eye does occasionally knock one over; but, as a general thing, the Indians, none too well supplied with ammunition, let them alone, because when shot they are of but little worth. Their flesh is tough and tasteless. The only thing at all prized is the beautiful skin, out of which the Indian women manufacture very picturesque fire-bags.

Several of these loons were seen swimming in Play Green Lake as our party paddled along, and Mr Ross decided to give the boys a chance to show their skill and quickness in firing at them, although he hardly

imagined any of them would be struck. As we have stated, when hunted they swim for long distances under the water, only coming up for an instant to breathe.

The sportsman who would strike them must have an alert eye and quick aim, and must fire the moment they are up, as they go down again suddenly, only to re-appear some hundreds of yards off in the most unexpected place.

The three canoes were paddled to positions about a third of a mile apart, at the points, as it were, of an equilateral triangle. In this large space thus enclosed, several loons were surrounded, and the work of trying to shoot them began. Before beginning to fire, the boys had been warned never, under any circumstance, to pull a trigger if one of the other boats should be in line, no matter though apparently distant. Bullets, even from an ordinary shot-gun, will sometimes so bound over the waves as to go immense distances, and very serious injuries have resulted. As it is almost impossible to kill a loon with ordinary shot, it was decided here to use either buck-shot or bullets, as the hunters preferred.

Part of the fun of loon hunting is in the absolute uncertainty as to the spot where the bird, after diving, will next show itself. It may appear a quarter of a mile away, or it may suddenly push up its bright head, and look at you out of its brilliant eyes not five yards from the side of your canoe. It has when hunted a certain dogged stubbornness against leaving the vicinity it was in when first assailed, and will remain in a small area, even of a large lake, although repeatedly fired at.

Hardly had the canoe, in which were Mr Ross and Frank with their two canoemen, taken its position

when a beautiful loon rose up about a hundred yards away, and not having been frightened, as no gun had as yet been fired, he sat there in all his beauty on the water watching them.

"Fire at him," said Mr Ross to Frank.

No sooner said than done, and away sped the bullet well and true on its message, and fairly and squarely hit the water exactly where the bird had been; but no bird was there. Quicker than that bullet could speed across those hundred yards the bird had dived, and ere Frank could recover from his chagrin, its brilliant eyes were looking at him from a spot not twenty yards away. The loon had been facing the canoe when fired at, and in diving had come on in a straight line towards them, and now here he was, so close to them, and looking so intently, that he seemed to say by his appearance, "I've come to see what all that noise was about."

So sudden was his appearance that no one in the boat was ready for him, and ere a gun could be pointed, he was down again, and, swimming directly under the boat, rose again on the other side more than a hundred yards away.

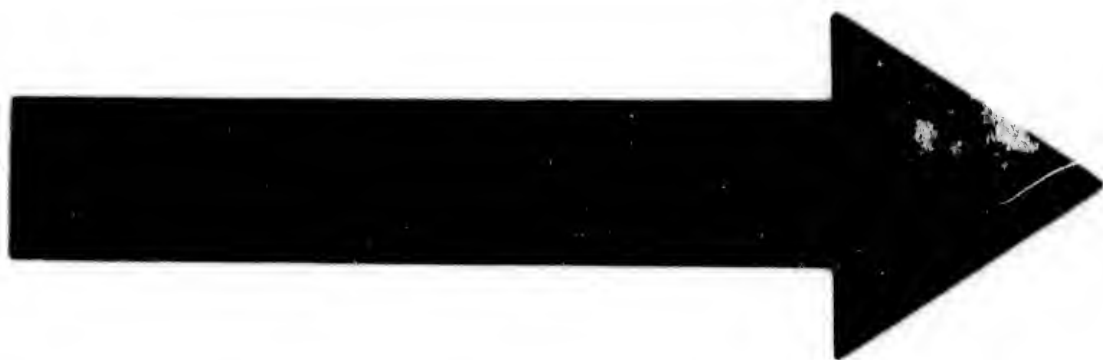
While this had been Frank's experience, the others had not been idle. As was quite natural, there was a great deal of good-natured rivalry among them as to which canoe would secure the honour of killing the first loon. Mustagan, who had charge of one, was an old hand at this work, and, as he was a keen hunter, he had caught this spirit of rivalry that had arisen. He determined to pit his long experience with these birds against their cleverness, and it was interesting to watch the contest between him and them. For a time his efforts met with complete failure, and the birds

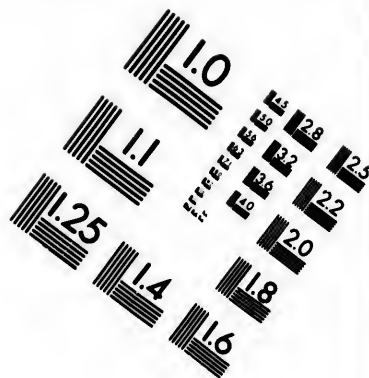
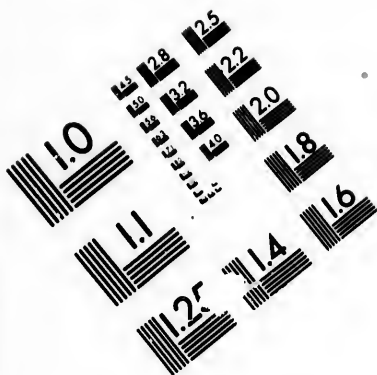
fairly outwitted him, and seemed to enjoy the fun.

Mustagan, however, was not discouraged, and he resolved on one more effort. He had learned from observation that the loon, with its marvelously brilliant eye, seemed to be able to see the flash of the gun, and so quick were its movements that it could dive ere the bullets or other missiles reached it. Acting on this knowledge, he rigged up in the canoe a kind of a barrier, behind which Sam was seated concealed from the sharp-sighted bird.

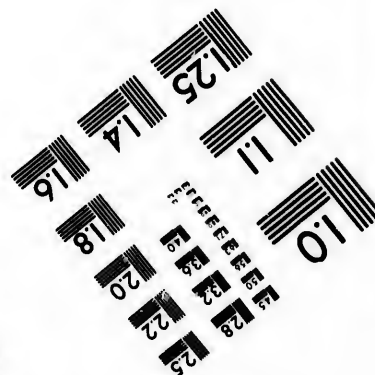
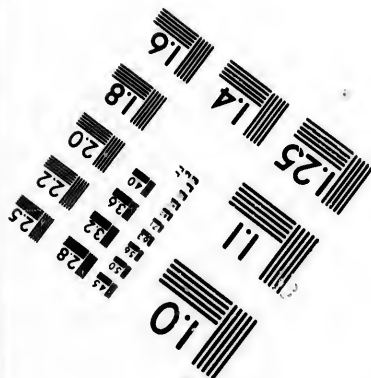
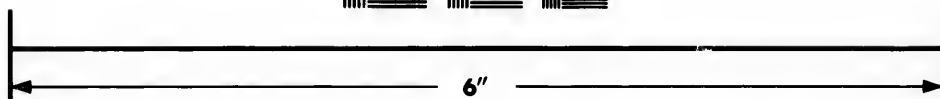
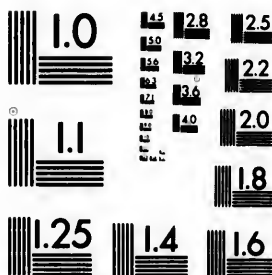
For a time they were not able to get a successful shot, although a great deal of ammunition was expended. Alec, with Big Tom and his other Indian canoemen, was equally unsuccessful. The loons themselves seemed to have entered into the spirit of the thing, and kept bobbing up here and there at most unexpected places, taking good care, however, to be out of the way each time a bullet arrived. It was at first strange to the boys that the bullets did not follow them beneath the water, but went bounding off and skipping over the surface, often for great distances.

At length, when Mr Ross began to fear that the ammunition had suffered enough, and that the boys had had sufficient of this kind of shooting—which, after all, was a most capital drill at quick firing—and was about to stop the sport, Mustagan pleaded for time to try one more experiment. He had been watching the movements of a splendid loon that had saucily and successfully challenged the guns from each boat in succession. For some time his quick eye had noticed that the bird was not quite so vigilant as it had been, and he resolved that it should be shot





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



and that Sam should have that honour. Strange as it may seem to those who have not had the fun of trying to shoot loons, these birds get to know that the hunters they are to watch are those who handle the guns. Knowing this, Mustagan bade Sam load his gun with buck-shot and slug. Swinging the canoe so that Sam would be completely hidden by the barrier prepared, he jumped up with his gun in a conspicuous manner, flourished his weapon, and thus kept the eyes of the bird on himself every time it arose. This went on for some minutes, until at length, as Mustagan did not fire, although brandishing his gun about, the loon seemed to lose his caution, and remained up longer each time he came to the surface.

This was what the wily old Indian was expecting, and so speaking to Sam, he told him to be on the watch, and soon he would have a successful shot. Sam, however, had to wait for quite a time, so erratic were the loon's movements, and in such unexpected places did he suddenly come up. But success generally comes to those who have patience to wait long enough, and so it was in this case. The fortunate opportunity came at last, for there, right in front of the canoe, not fifty yards away, rose up that beautiful bird, and the same instant, from the unseen gun and lad behind that little barrier, rang out the report which followed the fatal missiles that had done their work, for one of them had cut clean through the loon's neck, severing the vertebræ, and there he lay in the water with the snowy-white breast uppermost.

A rousing cheer told of the successful shot, and at once, when the bird was secured, the canoes were headed for the shore. There a dinner was quickly



prepared, and in glorious picnic style it was enjoyed by all. The loon was skinned by one of the Indian men, and subsequently was tanned in native fashion, and a beautiful fire-bag was made from it, of which in after years Sam was justly proud.

## CHAPTER VII

The Old Fort Camp—Sam's Race with the Bear--Indian  
Comments.

As the day was now advancing, and they had already had so much sport, they decided not to try to reach the old fort on Lake Winnipeg, where the Nelson River begins, that evening. So they paddled their canoes to the shore and there formed a camp. While the older members of the party remained at the fire, some of the younger and more eager ones took their guns and went off to see what they could shoot.

Frank succeeded in bringing down a great pelican that, with some others, had been gorging itself with gold-eyes—a beautiful kind of fish, similar in appearance to large herring, but with eyes so bright and golden that the appropriateness of the name is at once evident to all the first time they see it. Frank carried to the camp his great bird, but was disappointed when told that, as an article of food, it was worthless. One of the Indians, however, pleased him when he said that a very beautiful ornamental bag could be made of the great sac that hung down from its enormous bill. Alec was more successful, and returned soon after Frank with a number of fine ducks, which he carried hanging around him, with their heads crowded under his belt, in real Indian fashion.

The different Indians who had also gone off hunting returned one after another, and when supper was ready at the camp fire, about sunset, all had come back but Sam.

"Where was he?" "Who had seen him last?" These were the questions put, but no one seemed able to give any satisfactory answer.

As it was supposed he might return any minute, the supper, which consisted principally of the fish they had caught, and game they had shot, was eaten and much enjoyed.

Still no signs of Sam. Mr Ross began to feel uneasy, and as the shadows of the coming night were beginning to fall around them, he called Mustagan and some of the older Indians to him, and asked what had better be done. Promptly they responded that the truant must be found ere the last glimmering light faded away and the auroras began to dance and play in the northern sky.

"Let us once get on his trail," said an old Indian "and we will soon find him."

So the question was again asked, "Who had last seen him?"

But there was little need for an answer, as Sam, pale, excited and panting for breath, suddenly dashed into their midst.

"What is the matter?" said Mr Ross, while all the rest, with intense interest, waited for his answer.

All poor Sam could say was, "The bear! the bear!" as he lay panting on the ground.

Mustagan, quick to read signs, was the first to see what had happened; and hastily catching up his gun, and crowding down the barrel a bullet on the top of the buck-shot with which it was already loaded, he slipped out from the circle of light around the

camp fire and disappeared in the direction from which Sam had come.

He was not five minutes gone ere the report of his gun rang out. With all the imperturbable nature of an Indian, he returned to within easy calling distance of the camp fire, and asked for a couple of Indians to join him. Quickly they glided away in the darkness. It was not for long, however, that they were required. Soon their voices were heard asking that additional wood might be thrown upon the fire, in order that they might have a better light. Why they needed it was evident when they shortly afterwards appeared, dragging into the camp a splendid bear—the sight of which at first made Sam jump again, as though he would continue the journey he had so abruptly ended at the camp fire.

When Sam had quieted down, he told the story of his exciting adventure.

Like the others, he had taken his gun and gone off to see what he could shoot. At first, he did not meet with much success. He pushed on and on until he reached a long stretch of sandy beach, on which he detected the fresh footprints of a bear. Putting a bullet into his gun, he bravely started off to get that bear. On and on he hurried, reckless and excited, until at length he saw the fine fellow, not two hundred yards away, sitting on a flat rock a little way out from the shore, busily engaged in capturing fish.

Without any fear, Sam advanced until he was, as he thought, near enough to kill the bear, who was sitting on his haunches, with his back towards him, utterly unconscious of his presence.

Raising his gun, he fired. That he hit him, he was sure, as he said he saw the fur fly from a spot on his

from

his  
e of  
ance  
s to  
ark-  
were  
that  
, in  
hey  
ards  
r—  
, as  
so

y of

off  
not  
ntil  
he  
g a  
that  
ed,  
wo  
tle  
ng

as  
it-  
m,

was  
his



SAM'S RACE WITH A BEAR.

back. The instant the bear felt the wound he gave a roar of pain, and, turning around, without a moment's hesitation dashed into the water and came for him.

"All at once," said Sam, in a most comical manner, "as I saw what a big fellow he was, and his resolve to try and cultivate a closer acquaintance, I thought I had had hunting enough, and would like to go home and see my mother. But, as this was impossible, I decided that the next best thing was to get back to the camp as soon as possible. So I dropped my gun and started at a great rate. However, it did not take the bear long to get across that bit of water, and then on he came.

"My, but he did run, and quickly gained upon me. Then I dropped my brightly-coloured beaded Indian cap, hoping that that would delay him, but he only seemed to give it a sniff and a tear, and then on he came. Finding he was still gaining on me, I pulled off my leather coat and dropped it on the trail, and hurried on. Glancing behind me, I noticed that that seemed to make him suspicious for a time, as he carefully examined it. This delay was fortunate for me; but soon, to my alarm, I found he was once more coming on after me.

"It was now getting dark, but fortunately I knew the way and so dashed in upon you in the manner I did, just about used up."

The recital of Sam's adventure and narrow escape very much excited Frank and Alec, and Mr Ross looked grave and anxious, and seemed to be thinking of what would have been felt and said in the home lands if, during the first few weeks after the boys had arrived in the Wild North Land, one of them had been killed by a bear.

The Indians smoked their pipes and listened in



silence to Sam's story, which was translated for those who did not understand English. It was evident by their clouded faces that they were not pleased.

Their actions said, even before they uttered a word, "The young white brave should not have run away from a bear. Suppose that the bear had not been killed, and, after chasing the white hunter into the protection of the camp fire, had escaped and gone and told the other bears of his success, what a rejoicing there would have been among the other bears, and how bold and saucy all the bears would have been ever after."

Thus the Indians thought, for they have queer ideas about bears. Because of the hand-like appearance of the paws of the bear they say there is a good deal of the human in them. So they talk about them as holding councils, and taking advice one from another. And when they attack them, especially the Indians of these great Algonquin tribes, they always address them as Mr Bear, and apologise to them for being under the necessity of killing them.

Therefore the Indians at this camp fire were simply disgusted with Sam for running away from that black bear.

After a good smoke and much cogitation, one of them, who was a paddler in Sam's canoe, turned to him and said:

"You have a good knife?"

"Yes," said Sam, and he drew the keen, sharp, double-edged weapon from its sheath in his leather belt, and handed it to him to examine.

The Indian took it and, after carefully examining it, passed it on to the other Indians, who all



admired it. But it was noticed that, in their low utterances among themselves, there was much of sarcasm, and even contempt.

After some more smoking, another Indian turned to Sam, and said:

"No tree along the trail where the bear chase you?"

"Oh, yes," said Sam, "plenty of them, but I was afraid to take time enough to try and climb up into one of them."

This answer, which Sam gave in all honesty, was too much for the Indians, and the look of disgust that passed over their faces was a study. However, the one who had asked the question about the tree spoke up and said:

"No good climbing a tree. Bear better climber than any hunter. Tree only good for you to fight bear at the bottom. Put back against tree. Black bear rise up and come to hug you to death. He then never bite or tear, only hug. He try to squeeze the life out of you. So with good knife, and your back against a tree, keep cool, let bear come, and when he stand up on his hind legs and try to hug, you just give him your good knife straight in the heart. Bear fall over dead. You not hurt at all. All needed, keep cool all the time. No brave white boy, with good knife and plenty trees, must ever run away from black bear any more."

Thus he went on, in his broken English, to the mortification of Sam, who found that in using his good legs, that had often carried him in first in many a race at school, he had gone down very much in the estimation of the Indians, who think it is simply foolishness, as well as cowardice, if armed with anything like a decent knife, to refuse to give battle to

a bear from the trunk of the nearest tree. Thus the boys were getting hints, and learning lessons by experience, in reference to hunting.

Mr Ross did not chide the lad, but thought that it would have been better if, when he discovered the fresh track of the bear, he had immediately returned to the camp for assistance. The fact is, he was very thankful that nothing worse had happened.

Frank and Alec listened with intense interest to Sam's account of his race back to the camp, with the bear at his heels, and both declared that they would have done likewise. Later on we will find that they were able to adopt successfully the Indians' method, much to their delight.

## CHAPTER VIII

Preserving Meat—Cunning Partridges—Celestial Phenomenon—The Fearful Hurricane—Caught in the Storm—Disaster—The Mischievous Wolverine—Alec's Shot.

THE sun was shining brightly next morning ere the musical "Koos-koos-kah" rang out, calling them from their slumbers. When the boys arose they found the big bear already skinned, and some portions of his hams, cut as steaks, were being broiled, while his spare ribs were skidded on a couple of sticks, and were being roasted a nice brown colour in front of the fire, which burned so brightly on the rocks. The savoury odour of the cooking breakfast was very welcome.

A hasty plunge in the fresh water of the lake afforded a refreshing bath, and soon they were ready for their morning meal. Indians, if they have the chance, are not bad cooks, especially when working for those whom they respect, so, naturally under the eye of Mr Ross, whom they loved, they did their best. Thus, with some of the supplies from home added to the fish, duck, bear-steaks and spare ribs, they had a breakfast of which any hunters might be proud. The delicious, bracing air, the wild, romantic surroundings, the congenial company, the picturesque, attentive, red men, gave to this meal on the rocks, under the blue sky, such an exhilarat-

ing effect that the boys were fairly wild with delight. Even Sam had forgotten, in some degree, his exciting race and fright in the rare enjoyment of the hour.

Soon after, preparations were begun for continuing the journey. The question was, What was to be done with all the bear's meat, as there was too much to carry in their canoes with the other more necessary supplies? So the Indian plan of preserving meat fresh and sweet was adopted. A hole was dug in the earth to a depth of three or four feet, and in it the meat, well wrapt up in the bear's skin, was deposited. Meat will keep fresh and good in this way for many days. The hole was then carefully covered up and packed down by the Indians. On the top a large fire was kindled and then allowed to burn itself out. This was done to destroy the scent and thus save the "*cache*" from being discovered by prowling wolves and wolverines, that would, in all probability, visit the camp not long after the hunters had left.

Nothing of much importance occurred during the trip to the old fort. Their favourite camping-ground was reached in due time, and the boys had a couple of hours' duck and partridge shooting ere they sat down on the rocks to dinner. Each had something to say, but Frank most amused the party by a description of an old partridge that kept tumbling down ahead of him, and acting in the queerest manner. In fact, so amused was he by the queer antics of the bird, that he could not find it in his heart to shoot her. When Mr Ross heard Frank's story he said he was delighted to hear that he had not tried to shoot that partridge, as it was undoubtedly a mother bird, with a brood

of little ones not far off. He went on to tell not only of the clever tricks he had often witnessed in the old mother birds themselves, but also how cunningly the little ones acted when suddenly disturbed. They would make themselves invisible. Some would quickly disappear in little openings or under leaves, others would cleverly catch up old brown leaves in their mouths and suddenly turn over on their backs and lie still and quiet, thus hidden under the leaves. Mr Ross said he had seen them do this so quickly that he could hardly believe his eyes until he went and picked up the brown leaf and the little partridge that had so cleverly hidden itself beneath, and not until the little fellow was in his hands did it show any sign of life. Then, indeed, it was wild enough.

During the afternoon the sky became hazy and slightly overcast. The boys were treated to one of the peculiar phenomena not unfrequently seen in those high latitudes. First a great circle surrounded the sun, and at the east, west, top and bottom of it were seen very vivid mock suns. Shortly after another ring appeared inside this first one, and then another one on the outside of all, and in each circle there appeared four mock suns, clear, distinct and startling. In all, there was the sun himself in a beautiful halo in the centre, and around him were visible no less than twelve mock suns.

While this sight very much interested our lads, the older Indians were somewhat troubled, and at once proposed to Mr Ross the removal of their camp to a sheltered spot, where some dense forests of balsam and spruce would be a barrier against the

coming storm, which, they said, was not more than an hour off. Marvellously clever are the Indians in reading these signs in the heavens, and very rarely do they make mistakes.

To the boys there was not in these beautiful appearances in the sky anything that portended a storm, and they were disappointed when told that in all probability there would be but little hunting for perhaps some days. While this was not pleasant news, they willingly fell to work and did their share in removing to the place appointed. They were very much interested to see how skilfully the Indians cut poles, and, taking the oilcloths from the canoes, improvised a water-tight roof over a "lean-to," as they called it, against the storm that, they said, would soon be on them from a certain point indicated. Large, dry logs were cut and rolled into position to make a fire in the front of this improvised tent, under which they would have to find shelter. Kettles, food and blankets were brought up to this camp, and the canoes were carried to a sheltered spot, and turned over and fastened down with heavy logs and stones.

Very busily were the men employed, and yet more rapid were the changes that were taking place in the heavens above and around them. One by one the circles with the mock suns disappeared. Dark clouds began to appear in the north-western horizon, and rapidly they came up in the heavens. Vivid flashes of lightning were seen, and the rumbling thunder was heard from the rapidly-darkening clouds all around. The birds, that had been singing, now flew off to thick coverts and uttered only frightened cries. A dense, stuffy sensation seemed to be in the air; for a few moments every sound was hushed, and a calm, the most profound and ominous, fell upon

the whole face of nature. Not a blade of grass or a tall reed in the marshy places near the shore made the slightest movement. Nature was absolutely still. It was the dead, weird quiet before the awful hurricane—the quietude of death before the elemental war.

Only for a short time did it last; and, to judge by the feverish haste with which the Indians worked, it was evident they knew the meaning of this calm, and what would speedily follow. Large logs were piled up as a barrier behind the improvised tent, while every rope available was used to secure the poles which held up the roof of canvas and oilcloth. Poles were lashed across the top and tied down with the fishing nets, which had to do as substitutes for something better. Guns were well wrapped up in the oilcloth covers, and, with the axes, were placed at a distance from the camp.

“Get under cover, and hold on to something fixed and strong,” shouted Mustagan, who had been on the lookout, and saw that the storm was about to burst.

And it *was* a storm!

A strange, greenish appearance came into the north-western sky, and then suddenly there was heard and seen, far away, the oncoming tornado. The clouds that during the calm had apparently become motionless in the heavens, all at once became strangely broken and twisted, and then, as though impelled by some irresistible impulse, started, with a speed that seemed incredible, on their wild career. There seemed to roll up before them the strange colour in the sky, which now appeared like a great monster on the crest of the coming clouds. Blacker, denser and darker,



on they came. Far away the sound of the storm could be heard, while now the forked lightnings and peals of thunder were almost incessant.

Crouching under the shelter of the tent, Mr Ross and the three boys stood in the centre, while the stalwart Indians took the outside positions, each man with a grip of iron upon the poles and canvas.

Very strange and very different were the sensations of the boys. "This is glorious," said Alec, who had often, with his Highland friends, been caught in storms amidst the hills of his beloved Scotland.

"Wait until it is over," said the other boys, "and then we will tell you whether it is 'glorious' or not."

"Hold on," shouted Mr Ross. And in almost an instant a darkness like midnight was on them, broken only by a vivid flash of lightning, while the very ground seemed to shake under the awful thunder. Then the storm in all its fury burst forth. How they escaped seemed a miracle. Great trees all around them were bent and twisted and broken, and went down in scores, until the air seemed full of the falling trunks and branches. Large pieces fell upon the frail roof under which they were sheltered, but fortunately, while some holes were made, none was large enough to break through or injure them; indeed those that did fall on the tent were really a benefit, as they helped to hold down the canvas over them.

These American tornadoes are not of long duration. With a speed of perhaps over a hundred miles an hour, they sweep along with irre-



sistible power in their wild career. Their fury is soon spent, and years may pass ere they occur again. As a very heavy fall of rain immediately followed this hurricane, or tornado, our party was obliged to remain under their frail tent, which, in spite of the fury of the winds, thanks to the skill and strong arms of the Indians, had not been blown away. However, some of the larger branches that had fallen upon it had pierced the roof in some places, and now, as if out of the spout of a funnel, about a gallon of water suddenly struck Alec on the back of the neck, and nearly knocked him over, while he fairly howled at the suddenness of the dousing.

"Is that sousing 'glorious,' Alec?" asked Frank, who was doing his best to dodge the little streams that, through some other rents, were trying to reach him.

"Well, no, not exactly," was Alec's answer; "this beats anything I ever saw or heard of in the Highlands, and, now that the worst is over, I would not have missed such a thing for a good deal."

"What do you think of it, Sam?" said Frank.

Sam had cuddled down between Mr Ross and Mustagan, and at the advice of the latter had taken the precaution to double up a blanket like a shawl, and throw it over his head and shoulders. Very little wet had reached him, yet he had to confess that he had been terrified by this storm, which had excelled any dozen he had ever witnessed before.

"Think of it!" said he. "Faith, I have just

been thinking which is the worst--being chased by a fierce old bear, or frightened out of a year's growth by a tornado. Next time, if I am to choose between the two, I'll tackle the bear."

This answer caused a hearty laugh, and even the Indians, who had remained so quiet yet so alert to watch for any change in the storm, smiled and exchanged significant glances, and said that the boy would yet redeem himself.

After a time the rain ceased, the blue sky appeared and the sun shone out again. But what a change met their gaze as they came out from under their quickly improvised tent, and wandered around. The beautiful forests seemed about ruined. In one direction, just as though a great reaper had gone through a splendid meadow and cut clean to the ground a great swarth of grass, so had this cyclone gone through the forest. In the centre of its path not a tree had been left standing. Every one had gone down before this irresistible force. Fortunately, it had swerved a little to the right as it passed by our friends, or they would not have escaped so easily. As it was, great trees had fallen all around, and it was a providential escape that had been theirs; and for this they were more than grateful, as they saw on investigation the effects of the fury displayed by the tempest as it passed. The spot where the canoes had been hidden away was, of course, one of the first to which their steps were directed. A great tree had fallen across one of them that had not been placed low enough in the hollow between the rocks, and it was so crushed and broken as to be absolutely worthless. The others, however, had escaped, and were none the worse

for the storm, although prostrate trees were all around them.

Blankets, supplies and other things were overhauled, and everything that had caught the rain was soon drying in the warm sun, which was now smiling serenely upon them. The mock-suns, or "sun-dogs," as they were commonly called, all disappeared with the storm, of which they seemed to have been the harbinger. Beautiful as had been their appearance, the boys agreed that if their coming was to be so speedily followed by such a storm, they would gladly dispense with them in the future; nor did they see them again until when in the depth of winter, they showed up in their weird splendour, and heralded forth a blizzard storm, which played its wild pranks most thoroughly. But we must not anticipate.

Mr Ross and the Indians quickly shifted the camp to a more pleasant place. A fire was kindled, and a meal was cooked and eaten, and then there was a consultation as to the future. One canoe was destroyed. Could the whole party go in the other two, or had they better return to Sagastaweekee? As Mr Ross was anxious to hear whether the cyclone had done any damage at home, although he had not much fear, for it had apparently come from another direction, it was eventually decided that three of the Indians should return there, and bring back with them another canoe and all the news. They were also to call at the camp to take home the bear's robe and meat, which had been "*cached*" in the ground, as we have described. When ready to start, Alec to the surprise of all, asked to be permitted to go with

them. This request was readily granted, and soon, in one canoe, with their four paddles at work, they were speeding along at a great rate.

They pushed on without stopping until they began to round the point of a narrow tongue of land which would bring them into full view of their camp, although still some hundreds of yards away. The instant the point was turned, and the distant camping place came in sight, the Indian in the front of the canoe suddenly ducked down his head and whispered a sharp, quick "Hist!" and at once arrested the forward movement of the boat. Noiselessly and quickly was the canoe paddled back out of sight.

"What is the matter?" said Alec, who was surprised by the suddenness of this quick retrograde movement, and the quiet, suppressed excitement of the Indians.

"Wolverine" was the only word he heard, which was whispered from one Indian to the other. The utterance of this one word made Alec no wiser, until one of the men, who understood a little English, said, "Wolverine find the camp; smell the meat; dig him up; carry him away; we kill him."

This was no easy matter, as the wolverine is, without exception, the most cunning animal in the woods. He far outstrips in this respect the fox, or wolf, or bear. What these Indians were going to do must be done quickly. The first thing was to see that their guns were well loaded with bullets. The next was to find out if the wolverine's quick eyes had seen them, when for the few seconds they must have been visible as they rounded the point. The wind was in their favour, as it was blowing from him to them. The

oldest of the crew was appointed the leader; the rest were to follow his directions. First of all, he quietly went ashore, and noiselessly crawling through the underbrush across the point, was able to see that the wolverine was still at work. Evidently the animal had not the slightest suspicion that his enemies, the hunters, were near him. Returning to the canoe, the leader gave orders that they were to paddle back into the deep bay, so that there would be a possibility of their landing and getting in behind him, as their old camp, which he was robbing, was close to the shore.

Very noiselessly and yet rapidly did they hurry back, and land as quietly as possible at a suitable spot. It was here decided that three of them, with their guns, should try and get into the rear of the camp, while Alec, who had not yet the ability to travel with the speed and quietness essential to success, was to take his place just across the neck of land, where with his gun he could command the shore, if the wolverine, disturbed by those in the rear, should attempt to escape over the rocks in that direction. Before leaving, the leader said to Alec:

"Do not fire until you see the whites of his eyes, and then hit him, if possible, between them, or, if it is a side shot, strike him behind the fore shoulders."

Alec was excited, but he soon conquered his nervousness, and prepared to play his part well. His instructions were to wait for a few minutes ere he began to crawl to his assigned position. He thus had an opportunity of witnessing the cleverness and alertness of the three Indians starting on their critical work. Making a deep detour, they were soon out of sight in the forest, without as much noise as

the breaking of a single twig beneath their moccasined feet. More like phantoms they seemed, as so quietly they flitted away. When he thought it was time for him to move, he began, Indian-like, to advance to his assigned position, imitating as far as possible the movements he had witnessed in the Indians. To his great satisfaction he reached the designated spot without any trouble.

Carefully looking over the rocks and through some underbrush, he was able to see, through a pocket-telescope which he fortunately had with him, the busy wolverine still at work. Very interesting it was to watch him, even if it meant the destruction of all the meat. The wolverine was about as large as a first-class retriever dog. His legs, though short, were exceedingly muscular, and he had quite a bushy tail.

These animals are very powerful, and, in breaking into an Indian's *cache*, can remove logs and stones much larger and heavier than one man can lift. They are very destructive when they find a *cache* of this description. They not only have an enormous capacity for devouring the meat *cached* by the Indians, but they will carry away and cunningly hide large quantities. Over the whole they emit an odour so pungent and so disagreeable that neither hungry men nor starving dogs will touch it. The Indians simply detest the wolverine on account of its thievish propensities and its great cunning. There is always great rejoicing when one is killed. As Alec, through his telescope, watched the mischievous, busy animal, he became very much interested. He was amazed at the strength which enabled him to dig out from the ground a hind quarter of the bear, and easily carry it away to another place, where he cunningly hid it. His next effort, which much amused Alec;

was to take the bear's skin in his mouth and attempt to climb up into a tree that he might hide it among the branches. It was great fun to see the skin slipping under his feet, and thus causing him to lose his grip, so that he fell heavily to the ground. Failure, however, was not in his vocabulary. Again and again he seized the robe in his mouth and endeavoured to carry the awkward thing up that tree. But, alas for him! his very determination proved his destruction. So absorbed had he become in his efforts to succeed that he was for once in his life caught off his guard. The three Indians had succeeded in getting behind him, and had thus cut off his retreat into the forest. The first consciousness he had of his enemies was when three simultaneous shouts, from different parts of the forest behind him, told him of his danger. Cunning as he was, the Indians had clearly outwitted him. They knew that the loud shout from different parts at the same time was about the only way in which he could be puzzled, and this plan they had successfully adopted.

For an instant only he waited, and then as rapidly as possible he started along the only route that seemed open to him, which was the one from which no sound had come, but which would lead him exactly in the direction where Alec was waiting for him. This was just what the Indians were anticipating. Their hope was that Alec would make the successful shot; even if he failed, so narrow was the tongue of land on which the wolverine was running, that they felt that, by spreading out, they had him securely hedged in, and that it would be an impossibility for him to escape.

In the meantime Alec had been watching him through his glass until there fell upon his ears the



shouts of the Indians. When he saw the effect upon the wolverine, he was amused at the sudden change. While busy robbing the *cache* he seemed, by his saucy appearance, "the monarch of all he surveyed." Now he looked and acted as a craven coward, whose one thought was to escape. Alec, watching him, saw him spring upon a fallen log, and for an instant look in different directions towards the deep forest. The prospect did not seem to satisfy him, for springing down he at once began his journey directly towards where Alec was in hiding. When Alec saw this he quickly put away his telescope, and, seizing his gun, prepared for his opportunity. It was fortunate that the distance over which the wolverine had to travel was considerable, as this enabled Alec to get his nerves steady and his hands firm. When the wolverine had come about half the distance, his cunning suspiciousness seemed to return, and fearing some danger ahead, he stopped and acted as though he would like to retrace his steps and try some other plan. Fortunately for Alec the wind was still blowing toward him, and so the wolverine had not caught his scent. While thus halting and undecided, he was startled by another shout, which told him that his retreat was cut off, and so he quickly resumed his journey.

Knowing the cleverness of these animals, Alec had taken his position behind a rock, and there, with trigger drawn back, awaited his oncoming. "Wait until you see the white of his eyes," had been his instruction, and faithfully did he obey.

With his strange, slouching gait, along came the treacherous, cunning brute, until he reached a point where he stood fairly exposed on the lower of some step-like rocks. With eye keen, and nerve firm





ALEC SHOOTS THE WOLVERINE.

t  
v  
s

Alec stepped out from behind his cover, and ere the animal could get over the surprise at his sudden appearance, the report of the gun rang out and the wolverine fell dead, struck by the bullet fairly and squarely between the eyes.

Alec's shout of triumph brought the Indians to him on the run, and they in their quiet way congratulated him on doing what but few white hunters have ever done. He had had the honour of shooting one of the largest wolverines that had been killed in the country for a long time.

While one of the Indians hurried across the tongue of land for the canoe, and paddled it around to the camp, the rest of the party dragged the dead wolverine back to the scene of his depredations. Here they had the opportunity of seeing the destructiveness of this animal. Every pound of meat had been removed from the *cache*, and so cunningly hidden away, that not one piece could be found, except the one which Alec had seen him hide as he watched him through his telescope. And this piece was so permeated with the offensive odour that it was worthless. Fortunately the bear's skin was none the worse for its overhauling. While waiting for the coming of the canoe, the men set to work, and speedily skinned the wolverine. The fur is not very valuable, but to encourage the Indians to do all they can to destroy them, as they are so destructive to hunters' traps as well as to supplies, the Hudson Bay Company always give a good price for their pelts.

A few hours' paddling brought them to Sagastaweekee. Here they found all well. Fortunately the cyclone had passed some miles to the west of them, and they had escaped its fury. Hunters, however, had come in who had been exposed to its power and

had exciting tales to tell of narrow escapes and strange adventures.

Mrs Ross had become alarmed when she heard from some Indians, of the march of the cyclone in the direction in which her husband and his party had gone. She was pleased and delighted to welcome Alec back, and to hear from him and the Indians the story of their deliverance from serious accidents during the great storm.

The skins of the bear and wolverine were opened out, and much admired, and then handed over to some clever Indian women to dress carefully for their home going. The story of Sam's race from the bear very much amused them all. Nothing, however, so much delighted the Indian hunters, who gathered in, as the destruction of that old wolverine. It seems that same fellow had haunted that region of country for some years, destroying traps, robbing fish scaffolds and meat *caches*, and playing with all the steel traps that the cleverest hunters could set for him. Now, however, his reign was over, and here was his hide, and a big one it was. Alec was the hero, and although he modestly disclaimed all the honour except the first-class shot, the Indians were very proud of him, and showed it in various expressive ways.

## CHAPTER IX

Montreal Point—The Governor and the Iroquois—The  
Herd of Deer—Ominous Sounds—Pack of Wolves—  
A Fierce Battle—Welcome Reinforcements—Victory  
—"Playing Possum."

ALEC and the Indians started on their return journey early the next morning, taking with them a new canoe to replace the one that had been destroyed by the falling tree. They tarried not on the way, except to shoot a few ducks that were directly in their route. The result was that they arrived early in the forenoon at the Old Fort, and were glad to bring the good news that all were well at Sagastaweekee, and that the storm had passed by several miles away from them.

Of course, the story of the destruction of the *cache* by the wolverine, and of his being killed had to be told, much to the delight of Frank and Sam, as well as to the satisfaction of the older members of the party, who all rejoiced that at length the cunning fellow, that had so long been a terror and a nuisance, had been killed.

As the storm had completely died away, and the weather seemed fine and settled, it was decided to have an early dinner, then push on to Spider Islands

and there camp for the night. The re-arrangement of their outfit was soon completed and the journey commenced.

Lake Winnipeg is nearly three hundred miles long, and about eighty wide in its northern part. It is thus a great inland sea. Storms sweep over it at times with tremendous fury; it has many shallows and sunken rocks. The result is that it requires careful navigation for vessels drawing any considerable depth of water.

There are some laughable stories afloat about the nervous, excitable captain of the first schooner, who carefully came up to the northern end of the lake from Red River and pushed on as far as Norway House. He had secured as a guide an old Hudson Bay voyageur, who had piloted many a brigade of boats from Fort Garry to York Factory on the Hudson Bay. Of course the small boats to which the pilot was accustomed did not draw nearly as many feet of water as this three-masted schooner. Still, he imagined he knew where all the rocks and shoals were, and quickly accepted the offered position as guide for the first schooner.

In spite of his skill and care, several times the vessel bumped against a rock, much to the terror and alarm of the captain, but all the satisfaction he could get out of the imperturbable old native was, as they repeatedly struck,—

“Ah, captain, I told you there were many rocks, and there is another of them.”

Fortunately these rocks are very smooth, and as the vessel was moving along slowly she was not at all injured by thus merely touching them. When, however, she had, in passing over some sunken ones, nearly stranded on one or two, the

peppery old captain could stand it no longer, and so he shouted to the guide :

"Look here, old fellow, I'll not have my boat's bottom scratched any more like this."

All the answer he could get from the stolid man was :

"Um, bottom all right; only a few more rocks."

And these few more rocks they managed to get over, much to the delight and amazement of the Indians, who had never seen such a large vessel before.

With birch canoes our friends had no such trouble. As the wind was fair, the clever Indians fastened two paddles and improvised a sail for each canoe out of a blanket, and they were able to sail along at a great rate. But it requires careful steering, as the canoe is a cranky vessel at the best, and only those thoroughly accustomed to them ought to try to sail them.

The trip across to the Spider Islands was safely accomplished. The boys were pleased with their run, which was most exhilarating. Those who travel on the water in great ships only, miss much of the healthful excitement and delight that is the portion of those who are brave and adventurous enough to take some of these trips in the light canoes of the Indians.

The boys were charmed with the few picturesque islands, and had a joyous time of it, for the weather was most glorious, yet as there was no game, except some passing ducks that alighted at times in the little indentations that served as harbours, it was decided to push on to Montreal Point, which is the first landing-stage on the mainland on the east side of Lake Winnipeg. The point derived its name from the fact that, in the old days

of long trips made by Sir George Simpson in the great birch canoes, manned by the famous Iroquois Indians, this was the first stopping place from Norway House, on their return voyage to Montreal, some two thousand miles away. Marvellous are the stories told of the skill and endurance of those matchless crews of Indians. Sir George Simpson was a hard master, and pushed them to their very utmost. No dallying along the road was allowed when he was on board. He would put his hand over the side of the canoe into the water, and if the water did not fly perpendicularly before him with a swish, he would reprove in language that could not be misunderstood.

Very strange does it now appear when we read or talk to old men who were active participants in those events of the time, when the officials of the Company, from the despotic governor himself, down to the lowest clerk, travelled over half the continent in birch canoes, manned by Indians or half-breeds looking after the interests of the greatest fur-trading Company the world has ever seen. It is, after all, no wonder that they were in a hurry when the weather was favourable, as there were times when storms swept over the lakes with such fury that, in spite of all their skill and anxiety to push on, they were detained for days and days together. The wonder was that more lives were not lost in the daring recklessness that was often displayed. A characteristic story of Sir George Simpson, so long the energetic governor of the Company, is still repeated at many a camp fire.

It seems that on one of his return voyages to Montreal from Norway House, he was, if possible,



more arbitrary and domineering than ever, and especially seemed to single out for his spleen a big, burly fellow, a half French and half Iroquois voyageur. This half-breed, who was making his first trip, stood all this abuse good-naturedly for a time, and tried to do his best, but one day, at one of the camping places, where Sir George had been unusually abusive and sarcastic, the big fellow turned on him and gave him one of the handsomest thrashings a man ever received. The rest of the canoemen pretended to be so horror-stricken that they could not or would not interfere, until the thrashing had been well administered to the governor, and then they made a noisy show of delivering the tyrant out of the clutches of their enraged comrade.

Of course, when the governor recovered his voice, and was able to get the better of his anger and indignation at the fact that he, the great Sir George Simpson, had been treated with such indignity by a miserable voyageur, he vented, in not very polished French, his threats upon his assailant. He said,—

“Just wait until we reach Montreal, and I will soon clap this villain into prison, and have him kept there until the flesh rots off his bones.”

With this, and other threats of what he would do, the governor worked off his passion. The imperturbable canoeman having obtained his satisfaction in the thrashing administered, returned to his duties, and paid no more attention to the threats of Sir George. What cared he? It would be many days ere Montreal was reached, and there were many rapids to run, and portages to cross, and so there was no need of worrying about what was

distant. But the governor, although he had ceased to scold, was very glum and distant, and the voyageur began to think that perhaps it would go badly with him, and he would have to suffer for his deed. His fears were not allayed or lessened by his chums, who conjured up all sorts of dire calamities that would befall him, and invented any amount of stories of pains and penalties that had been inflicted on others who had dared to resent the governor's tyrannies.

Thus the days passed, and at length they reached La Chine, at the end of the Ottawa River, not very far from Montreal. Here the Company had, in those days, a large trading establishment. Shortly after they landed, and Sir George, who was met by the officials of the Company there stationed, went with them into the principal building, and was in close consultation, while the feelings of the voyageur were not enviable. The big men were not long in consultation, ere the delinquent's name was called out in a loud, stern voice. There was nothing for him but to obey, and so he marched up into the building and met the officials and Sir George.

To his surprise and astonishment, Sir George held out his hand, and made a full apology for his hasty words and petulant temper, and stated that the thrashing he had received had been richly deserved, and that it had done him good, as it had opened his eyes to see that he had grown tyrannical and overbearing, and was expecting more than possibilities of the men. Then, to show the genuineness of his apology, he ordered the clerk to give to this man the best outfit of clothing, and other handsome presents, and to charge the whole to his, Sir George's, private personal account.

A couple of hours were quite sufficient to take the boys and Indians across the wide, open expanse of lake that lay between Spider Island and Montreal Point on Lake Winnipeg. When drawing near the coast they were pleased to see some deer sporting on the shore. It is a peculiarity of some animals when on the edge of a lake that, while they are exceedingly alert and watchful against any surprise from the land, they seem to have no idea of danger from the water. The result is, the experienced Indians can, by cautious stalking, get quite near to them.

This is true of some of the deer tribe, and the boys now had an illustration of it. These deer are called in that country by the Indians, Wa-was-ka-sew. They are very graceful in their movements, and full of play. The canoes were halted two or three hundred yards from the shore, and the movements of the small herd were watched with great interest. Then Mr Ross quietly passed the word that an effort would be made to get a successful shot or two. As the guns they used were not to be depended upon to carry a bullet accurately more than a hundred yards, it was decided to back up and make a long detour, and land some hunters ahead of the deer, in a clump of timber towards which they seemed to be moving.

Noiselessly the paddles were plied, and when they were several hundreds of yards out, the Indians rapidly paddled on to the spot selected, which was perhaps half-a-mile ahead of the deer. As Alec had had such a successful time with the wolverine, it was decided that this was Frank's and Sam's opportunity, and so they, with one of the younger Indians from each boat, under the leadership of

the famous Mustagan, were cautiously landed, each one with his gun, knife, and hunting hatchet. Then the boats put out again from the shore to watch the progress of events.

Not long were they kept waiting, for hardly had they reached a position where they imagined their presence would not be observed, before they saw that the deer had become very much excited, and had all huddled close together on the shore. Mr Ross and the rest at first thought that they must have observed the canoes, or had caught the scent of those who had landed. A moment's observation revealed that this was not the case. The very position of the deer showed that their fears were caused by enemies behind them, and they had not long to wait ere those enemies were first heard and then seen. For faintly coming on the wind sounded the long, weird, doleful howls of a pack of wolves. At first the deer seemed to think of defence. The bucks formed a compact line, with their antlered heads down towards the point from which the rapidly-increasing howls were coming, while the does and young deer crowded in behind, but not long did they thus remain. A louder chorus of horrid sounds reached them, which seemed to tell of triumph at having struck the warm scent of their victims. These dreadful howlings were too much for the timid deer, and with a rush they were off with the speed of the wind, running directly towards the point where Mustagan had placed the two boys and the Indians. It was very fortunate for them that, in this hour of peril, they had the cool-headed and courageous Mustagan in command.

He had been watching the deer from his hiding place, and had observed their sudden fear and

precipitate retreat. His long experience at once came to his help, and before his acute ear had caught the sound of the distant howlings of the wolves, he was certain of their coming. With a celerity most marvellous, he gathered in the boys and Indians and quickly explained how matters stood, and told them that their bullets would probably be required for other game than deer.

Taking a hasty survey of the ground along which he was sure the deer would fly, pursued by the wolves, he arranged his men, keeping the boys with himself.

His instructions were to let the deer go by unalarmed; then, as the wolves followed, for each to pick out one and fire. If attacked by the rest of the pack, they were to close in together and fight them with their axes and their knives. If, however, they were not attacked after they had fired they were to load their guns again as quickly as possible.

"Down to your places," sternly spoke Mustagan.

And hardly a moment passed ere the herd of deer flew by, some of them so close to the hidden hunters that they could almost have touched them with their guns.

"Steady, boys!" were Mustagan's whispered words to the white lad, crouching down near him with fingers on the triggers of their guns; but they had caught his cool, brave spirit, and, although the blood-curdling howls of the wolves were now distinctly heard, they flinched not in the strain of those trying moments.

As Frank's and Sam's guns were, on this excursion, only single barrelled, while the rest were double barrelled, Mustagan said:

"When first wolf reach that stone, Frank, kill him.

Then Sam hit the next one, then I kill some. Then other Indians fire. Perhaps other wolves run away. Perhaps not, so have axes handy." This advice was not neglected, for each axe, keen edged and serviceable, was at the side of its owner.

"Now here they come," shouted Mustagan.

Nothing can be more trying to brave hunters than such a position as this. Travellers in Russia, and elsewhere, who have been assailed by packs of fierce wolves sending out their merciless, blood-curdling howlings, can appreciate the position of Frank and Sam. Yet they were true as steel, and when the word was given by the old Indian, in whom they had such implicit confidence, the guns were raised, and, with nerves firm and strong, they fired with unerring accuracy, and two great grey wolves fell dead, pierced by the death-dealing bullets.

Then Mustagan fired. He was too wise a hunter to waste a bullet on a single wolf, if, with it, there were a possibility of killing two, and, so as the two leaders, who had been a little in advance of the pack, had fallen, he fired at two that were running side by side. His bullet first went through the body of the one nearer to him, and then broke the back of the second.

In an instant there rang out the reports of the other guns, and as many more of the wolves lay dead or dying on the ground. Now was the crisis of the battle. Wolves are the most treacherous and erratic animals to hunt. Sometimes they are the most arrant cowards, and will turn and run away at the slightest appearance of resistance or attack. At other times they will continue to advance against all odds. Their courage and ferocity seem to increase with their numbers, and are, of course, greatest when

Then  
way.  
was  
vice-

ters  
ssia,  
cks  
ood-  
of  
und  
nom  
were  
red  
ves

r to  
ere  
ers,  
had  
by  
the  
the

the  
lay  
of  
and  
the  
at  
At  
all  
ase  
nen





THE FIGHT WITH THE WOLVES.



they are half famished for food. Gaunt and half starved these fierce ones seemed to be. And so when the guns suddenly rang out, and numbers of them fell, the others were at first somewhat disconcerted, but the hot scent of the deer was so close, and the fact that their enemies were invisible, made them determined not to yield at this first alarm.

With a rush the survivors, perhaps about twenty in number, dashed into the thickets into which the deer had disappeared, and from which their enemies had fired upon them. Sudden as was this rush, it was not quicker than the movements of the hunters, who had closed in together, and, with axe in hand, were ready for their wild, mad attack. Mustagan and his three Indians were in front, while the two boys were placed a little in the rear.

As the pack came on, some of them seemed disconcerted by the appearance of the hunters, and especially by the loud shouts which, at Mustagan's orders, they now made. All wild animals seem to have a dread of the human voice. Thus it was on this occasion. Some of the wolves were startled, and fell back, but numbers of them resolutely dashed on to the attack. Then it was axe against teeth, and one wolf after another fell dead, or badly wounded, under the heavy, skilful blows. Frank and Sam each had the satisfaction of finishing off some of the wounded ones.

The conflict was a fierce one, and how it would have gone with them eventually is hard to say, but it was victoriously ended by a welcome arrival of additional forces. Mr Ross, and the others in the canoes, had also been watching the deer, and had seen their startled movements and sudden flight. This had caused them to use their paddles as vigorously as possible, and make for the shore. Ere they reached



it the howling of the wolves fell on their ears. Then they had seen the rapid flight of the herd, and soon after the wild rush of the wolves not far behind them. So as speedily as possible Mr Ross and the party had landed in the rear and hastened on.

The firing of the guns of Mustagan and his party plainly told them of the position of their friends, and they cautiously hurried along, and were in good time to pour a side volley into the wolves that were now making a fierce attack on the men and boys.

This was too much for the wolves, and with howls of baffled rage they turned to the east and disappeared in the forest, to be seen no more.

Many and sincere were the congratulations of all at the success and deliverance.

This was the largest pack of wolves that had been seen or heard of in that part of the country for years. The great northern wolves do not as a general thing hunt in very large numbers as do the smaller wolves of the prairies, or of the steppes of Russia, or as the brown wolf used to do in the new settlements of Canada and in some parts of the United States. A pack of eight or ten of these big, fierce northern wolves was considered by the Indians as many as generally hunted together. Although, sometimes, when a few got on the trail of a large moose or reindeer that led them for a long time, they were apt to be joined by others, until they mustered quite a number. Mustagan's idea was, that a number of small, separate packs had for days been on the trail of the different deer which had at length gathered into this herd. All they could do, of course, was thus to conjecture, but here was the startling fact—they had seen and

encountered the largest pack of great northern wolves ever seen in that land.

There was still something to be done. While a dozen or so lay dead where they were shot, others, badly wounded, were making desperate efforts to escape. These had to be killed, and while some were being despatched with axes by the Indians, to the boys was given the pleasure of sending the deadly bullets into others, and thus quickly putting them out of misery.

"Be careful," said Mustagan, "as you move around among the apparently dead ones. Wolves are most treacherous brutes, and sometimes badly-wounded ones will feign to be dead when very far from it. By this they hope to escape the extra bullet or fatal blow of the axe that would quickly finish them. Then when the hunters are off their guard, or night comes on, they hope to be able to skulk away."

This cunning feigning of death, when wounded or captured, is not confined to wolves. There are several other animals that often try to play "possum" in like manner.

The warning of the old Indian did not come too soon, and fortunate indeed it was for one of the party.

The skins of some fur-bearing animals are not considered *prime* when they are killed in the summer months; the bitter cold of winter very much thickens and improves the fur. However, sometimes the bears and wolves are almost as good then as in the colder months, and bring nearly as high a price in some foreign markets. As soon as the work of killing the wounded ones was apparently over, Mr Ross began feeling their fur as they lay

around, ere the Indians commenced the work of skinning them. To the boys, who were closely following him, he explained the difference between what they called, in the fur trade, a *prime* skin, and one of inferior value. After several had been tested in this way, and all signs of movement on the part of any of the wolves had ceased, they happened to come to one very large fellow, settled out flat on its belly, apparently stone-dead.

"Here is the finest one we have seen thus far," said Mr Ross, as he stooped down and began pulling at the dark grey fur, while the boys stood around with their guns held by the barrels and resting on the ground.

While listening to Mr Ross's explanations in reference to the different grades of skins, Sam's sharp eyes fancied they detected a slight quiver in the eyelids of the fierce brute, that was apparently unconscious of the thorough way in which Mr Ross was pulling its fur, and testing it in various places. Not wishing to be laughed at, Sam said nothing about the suspicion that life was still there, but nevertheless, without attracting attention, he so changed the position of his loaded gun that it would not take him long to fire if necessity arose. And very soon the occasion came. As Mr Ross moved around to the front of the animal, he stooped down to feel the thickness of the fur that grows between the short ears. No sooner had he done this than, with the fury of a demon, the wolf sprang up at him, and made a desperate attempt to seize him by the throat.

He was completely thrown off his guard, but fortunately, as the brute sprang at him, he threw up his arm, and thus saved his throat. The arm

was pierced by the sharp teeth that seemed to penetrate through the clothing and flesh to the very bone. However, that was a last spring, and a last bite, for before even Mustagan or any one else could seize a weapon, the report of Sam's gun rang out, and the wolf fell, dead enough this time. Sam had put the muzzle within a yard of its side, and the charge had fairly torn its way through.

So savage had been the attack, and so viciously had the wolf fastened on to the arm of Mr Ross, that when the brute fell over dead, the jaws remained set with the teeth in the flesh, and Mr Ross fell, or was dragged to the ground by the weight of the animal. Mustagan and others had to use the handle of an axe to force open the jaws before the wounded arm could be released.

"Well done, Sam!" was the chorus that rang out from all. After Mr Ross's arm had been stripped and bathed in some decoction of Indian herbs, which were quickly gathered and steeped, Sam told of his suspicions when the eyelids quivered, and of his precaution in getting his gun ready. Of course it would have been better if he had mentioned it at the time, but he feared to be laughed at as he thought at the time, that perhaps the wolf's eyelids had the same habit as a snake's tail, of moving for some time after the animal is dead.

The dead wolf was examined for other wounds, and was found to be shot through the body behind the ribs, where no vital organ had been touched. This shot had given it a momentary paralysis which had caused it to drop so flat upon the ground. The Indians' idea was that it recovered itself while they were all around it, and cunningly lay still, hoping to get away when they left, but Mr Ross's handling it

was too much of an insult to be ignored, and so it suddenly sprang at him as described.

Of course the wounded arm needed to be promptly attended to more thoroughly than it could be on that wild spot, and so every Indian was set to work to skin the wolves; and then the home trip began.

## CHAPTER X

Romantic Courtship—The Happy Family—A Canoe Picnic  
—Mustagan—A Prowling Bear—A Woman's Shot.

WHEN the full details of the battle with the wolves and the prominent part that Sam had played in the rescue of his friend became known, Mr Ross's family were at first very much excited at his narrow escape, and then full of congratulations for Sam's shrewdness and the promptitude with which he had acted.

We have as yet said but little about this family, and so we will use some of the time, while Mr Ross is recovering from his wounds, in giving a few details which we are sure will be most interesting, as some of them partake most decidedly of the romantic.

Mr Ross, like many a Hudson Bay official, was rather late in choosing a wife. His busy life in the service, where on each promotion he was removed from one post to another, made it almost impossible to set up a home. When he decided to do so, his plan was decidedly romantic. In those remote, lonely regions there are not many white families from which the young gentlemen in the service can select wives. The result is many of them marry native women, or the daughters of mixed marriages on the part of the older officials. These women make excellent wives and mothers, and being ambitious to learn, they often

become as clever and bright as their white sisters, to many of whom they are superior in personal appearance. Into many a cosy home can the adventurous tourist go, and never would he dream that the stately, refined, cultured woman at the head of the home, honoured by her husband, and beloved by her children, was, if not of pure Indian blood, at least the daughter or grand-daughter of a pure Indian.

Very romantic is the story of Mr Ross's love adventure, and it is given here for the first time. Long years before this, when Mr Ross was comparatively a young man, he saw in one of the Indian villages a little dark-eyed native girl who looked to him as beautiful as a poet's dream. Although she was only ten or twelve years old, and he over thirty, he fell desperately in love with her and said she must one day be his wife. He knew her language, and soon found that the bright and beautiful child was willing, some time in the future, to become his bride.

So it was arranged that she should be sent to the old land to be educated. Fortunately good Bishop Anderson was returning to England, in connection with his work in the Red River Settlement, going by the Hudson Bay Company's ship. Wenonah was placed in charge of his family on the voyage, and at the journey's end was sent to a first-class school. Here, at Mr Ross's expense, she was kept for several years until she was highly educated as a student, and then loving, interested ladies taught her, in their kindness, the things essential for a good house-keeper to know.

When she was about twenty years of age, she returned to the Hudson Bay territories, and was married by the missionary to Mr Ross, who had so



well deserved the skilful, loving wife she ever proved to be. Over twenty years of wedded life had been theirs before Mr Ross retired from the service, and several more had passed ere our story opened. Two sons were away from home as clerks in the Company's service, at some remote stations similar to those in which most of the officials had begun their apprenticeship.

At home were two bright girls about ten and eight years of age, and a younger brother hardly six, whose name was Roderick. The names of the girls were Minniehaha and Wenonah. A delightful home was theirs, even if in a place so remote from civilisation. Mrs Ross had devoted much of her time to the education of her children. The house was furnished with a splendid library, which Mr Ross himself had gathered with a great deal of care. For music, the piano and harp were the favourite instruments, and several members of the family were able to play exceedingly well. So well cultured were they that they would be considered a well-educated and intellectual family in any land.

There was for a time some anxiety about the wounds which Mr Ross had received when the wolf savagely sprang at him. However, he was under the careful treatment of Memotas, the Christian Indian doctor, whose fame was in all the land, not only for his marvellous skill but for his noble, upright character.

During the days of convalescence, when it was thought best for him to keep quiet, so that there might be the more rapid healing of the wounds, there were no long excursions made by the boys. The fact was, they had been so surfeited with excitement that they were quite contented to remain at Sagasta-

weekce and revel in its library, in which they found many an interesting volume.

Of course this did not mean that they were not much out in the canoes, and among the wigwams of the Indians, who were camped about on the various points within easy reaching distances. The natives were always delighted to see the boys, and utilised what little English they possessed in order to impart to them as much information as possible. The visits to Big Tom and Mustagan were always a great pleasure. As Mustagan talked English, they were not obliged to have an interpreter, and they enjoyed his company very much and were always delighted when they could set him talking on his Arctic adventures and narrow escapes in Polar regions. He was a man with a marvellous history, as he had been employed in no less than five Arctic expeditions. He was with Sir John Richardson and Dr Ray on their desperate expeditions when they so courageously and persistently endeavoured to make the sullen North reveal the story of the destruction of Sir John Franklin and his gallant comrades. Some of his wonderful adventures we must have from his own lips after a while.

Although Mrs Ross was, as has been stated, a refined and cultured woman, still she had all her nation's love for the canoe and outdoor life. The result was, many short excursions were undertaken by her, and her children, to various beautiful, and picturesque spots within a few miles from home.

On these excursions one or two faithful, well-armed old Indians were always taken, as it might happen that a fierce old bear or prowling wolf would unexpectedly make his appearance. That this precaution was necessary was clearly proved by an

adventure that had occurred some time before the arrival of the boys. Mrs Ross, accompanied by her three youngest children, had taken a large canoe, manned by a couple of Indians, and had gone to spend the day at Playgreen Point, which was ever, as its name would imply, a favourite spot for old and young, Indians and whites. They had with them a large basket of supplies, and anticipated a very pleasant outing. They reached their destination in good time, and in various ways were enjoying their holiday. They had all wandered some distance from the spot where they had landed, and where the canoe had been drawn up on the beach by the Indians. These men, after seeing that everything was made right, and that there were no signs of prowling wild beasts around, had, as Mrs Ross had suggested, taken their axes and penetrated some distance into the interior of the forest, to see if they could find any large birch trees, the bark of which would be suitable for a new canoe.

After the young folks had amused themselves for a time with their sports, they began to think it was time for a raid upon the lunch-basket, and Mrs Ross, who had been sitting on a rock reading, shut her book and accompanied them back to the canoe, where they had left their supplies. An abrupt turn in the path brought them in plain sight of the canoe, which was about a hundred yards directly in front of them. There was a sight at which they had to laugh, although there was a spice of danger mixed with it, for seated in the canoe, with the large hamper in his lap, was a good-sized black bear, deliberately helping himself to the contents. Gravely

he lifted to his mouth, in his hand-like paws, the sandwiches and cakes, and then he cleared out with great satisfaction a large bowl of jelly, spilling, however, a good deal of it on his face. Mrs Ross would have endeavoured to retreat noiselessly with the children, but the sight of their dinner disappearing down the bear's throat was too much for them; and ere the mother could restrain them, a simultaneous shout from them alarmed the bear and quickly brought his meal to a close. The sudden shouting, and the apparition of these people were too much for him, so jamming what food he had at that instant in his paws into his mouth he sprang out of the canoe into the water, and began swimming at a great rate towards a small island that was directly out from the mainland. Seeing him thus retreating, and wishing to keep him at it, Mrs Ross and the children, with all the display and noise they could make, rushed forward, and thus caused him to redouble his efforts to get away.

This was the wisest thing they could have done. A bear is quick to notice whether his presence causes alarm or not. A bold front will generally cause him to retreat, while on the other hand, if he sees any signs of cowardice, or thinks he can terrify his enemies and cause them to fly from him, he is not slow in being the aggressor and making the attempt.

Mrs Ross, knowing well some of the characteristics of bears, and their habits, was not to be taken off her guard, and she was resolved to be prepared for every emergency. Her first precaution was to take out one of the guns and load it well with ball. Then she explored the lunch-basket to find out the

extent of the bear's raid upon it. To the children's sorrow they found that, from their standpoint, the best part of the contents of the hamper was gone. The cakes and most of the jam, which in that country is such a luxury, as it has to be imported all the way from England, had disappeared. However, there were some packages of bread and butter, and cold meats, and so they did not starve.

But what about the bear. The island which he had now reached was not more than a quarter of a mile away. No other one was near, and a frightened bear dislikes to be on an island. He seems to be conscious of the fact that he is at a disadvantage, and he will endeavour to leave it for the mainland as quickly as possible. Mrs Ross knew this, and she felt, after she had thought it over, that in all probability, very soon after the bear had reached the island and observed its limited area and lack of dense forest in which he could hide himself, he would take it into his head, for his own personal safety, to return quickly to the mainland. With this knowledge of the bear's habits, she resolved to be ready for him in case he made the attempt. The first thing, however, was to endeavour to recall the men who were at work in the forest. This she did by taking the other gun from the boat and heavily loading it with powder; this when fired made a very loud report. Three times in quick succession did Mrs Ross thus heavily load the gun and fire. She knew that, if the men were within hearing, the sounds of these three reports, when there were only two guns, would indicate that something was wrong, and that it was necessary for them at once to return.

But while the reports were heard by the men, and caused them to start on their return at once, as was desired, they also startled the bear, and so alarmed and frightened him that he immediately sprang into the water and began swimming for the mainland. The situation was most exciting. Here on the mainland was a lady and three young children. Their Indian protectors were a couple of miles or so away in the rear, and directly in front, swimming towards them, was a great black bear. When half-way across from the island, he veered a little in order to reach a point of rock that projected a little from the mainland, not two hundred yards away from where Mrs Ross and the children were. The majority of people would gladly have let the animal escape. Mrs Ross and her children, however, were not of that opinion. His skin would make a beautiful robe. His flesh was good for food, and his fat was the substitute for lard in that land, and was therefore valuable.

Then, worst of all, had he not eaten the cakes, and especially the jam, so, of course, mother must shoot him when he comes near the shore, if the Indians do not arrive in time.

Mrs Ross took the precaution to load both guns with bullets, then launching the canoe she bade her children get into it, and giving the two elder their paddles, which, young as they were, they could handle like the Indian children, she gave them their orders. She would go to that point towards which the bear was swimming, keeping herself well hidden from the bear. When he was near to the shore she would fire; if she did not kill him with the two shots, or only

badly wound him, she would, after firing, hurry to where they were waiting for her in the canoe, and then, embarking with them, they would all be safe on the water, as they could paddle much faster than the bear could swim, even if he should try to catch them.

These were wise precautions in case things did not go as anticipated. Everything was soon arranged, and then Mrs Ross, taking the guns, dropped back a little in the rear, and quietly and quickly reached a good position behind a rock, not far from where it was now evident the bear intended to land. Carefully arranging her guns, she waited until the animal was about fifty or sixty yards away, when, resting one of the guns on the rock, she took deliberate aim at the spot between the eyes, and fired.

No second ball was necessary, for suddenly the head went down and a lifeless body rose and fell on the shining waves. The bear was stone dead, and all danger was at once over.

A shout from the children caused her to look round, and she saw it was caused by the arrival of the two Indians, who, almost breathless, had at that moment appeared in sight.

As though it were a matter of everyday occurrence, she said to her men, as they reached her:

"Please carry the guns back to the landing-place; tell the children to come ashore, and then you two take the canoe and go and bring in that dead bear."

The anxiety that had been in the minds of these two Indians during the last twenty minutes, while they had been running two or three miles, quickly left them, and there was a gleam of pride in their dark eyes, to think that this cool, brave woman,

whose unerring shot had thus killed the bear, was of their own race and tribe. Mrs Ross, although the wife of a great white man, was always the loving friend of her own people, and did very much for their comfort and happiness. Here was a deed that would, if possible, still more exalt her in their estimation; and so this story, with various startling additions, was long a favourite one in many a wigwam and at many a camp fire.

The bear was soon dragged ashore and skinned. It was then cut up and the meat packed away in the canoe. And the children rejoiced that he would never, never steal any more jam.



## CHAPTER XI

The Wonderful Story of Apetak, the Grateful Indian, and the Description of the Trip to, and View of the Silver Cave, as told by Mr Ross at Sagastaweekee.

"TELL us a true story to-night," said little Roderick, the youngest in the family and the pet of all, as he climbed up on his father's knee.

"Yes, please, Mr Ross," said Sam, "tell us that wonderful story your father told you about the old Indian and the silver cave."

It was a capital night for a good story. The rain was pattering against the window panes, while the winds, fierce and wild, were howling around the building, making it vastly more pleasant to be inside than out, even on a first-class hunting excursion.

As Sam's request was re-echoed by all, Mr Ross cheerfully consented, and when they had gathered around him, and taken their favourite places, he began:

"My father was in the service of the Hudson Bay Company for many years. He began as a junior clerk, and worked his way up until he became a chief factor, which is the highest position next to that of the governor. During his long career in the service, he was moved about a good deal from one station or post to another. The result was he became acquainted with various parts of the country and with different tribes of Indians.

"Many years ago, when he had been promoted to the charge of a fairly good post, the incident I am about to tell you took place. As master in charge my father was, of course, as all H. B. Company's officers are, very anxious to make large returns of fur each year. The dividends were greater when the sales were largest.

"Father had perhaps a hundred hunters at his post, all were more or less skilful and successful in this fur hunting.

"There was one old Indian, whom we will call Apetak, who was by odds the most skilful hunter father had. Not only was he successful in bringing the greatest quantity of furs to the post, but he was most fortunate in being able to capture more of the valuable black and silver foxes, and other of the richest fur-bearing animals. His great success as a hunter made him very much of a favourite with my father. In addition, he had many very excellent qualities, which made him respected and trusted by all, both whites and Indians.

"One winter, however, he nearly lost his life. It happened in this way. Shortly after the ice had formed on one of the great lakes in his hunting grounds, he shot at and wounded a great moose. The animal, mad with the pain of the wound, dashed out of the forest and made for the lake, on which was a covering of thin ice. He was only able to run on it a few yards ere it broke under him, and let him through into the water. Apetak did not like to lose the animal, as there was enough good meat on him to keep his pot boiling for weeks, so he made a noose in a lasso, and tried to get near enough to throw it over the moose's head, and

thus to buoy him up until he could get help to drag the body out.

"Unfortunately, he ventured too far out on the poor ice, and broke in. He managed to get out, but the day was bitterly cold, and he suffered very much. A bad cold settled upon his lungs, and it seemed as though he must die. When my father heard of this, he sent his own dog-sledge and plenty of blankets to Apetak's wigwam, and brought him to the trading post, and had him put into a warm, comfortable bed, and well-cared for. He kept him there all winter, but it was not until spring that he got strong and well. He had thus lost that winter's hunt, as he had not been able to set a trap or fire a gun. However, my father gave him the necessary supplies in view of his past services, and charged him nothing for them. For this he was very grateful.

"With the bright spring weather he regained his usual health, and once more entered upon his work. But he could never forget my father's kindness, and was anxious in some way to show his gratitude. Money there was none then in the country, as everything in the way of trade was done by barter. He could not give a present of the rich and valuable furs, as he well knew father would not be allowed to accept them, as the Company had made a very strict rule against anything of the kind. They demanded that all furs should go into their sale shops, and not one of their officials, from the governor to the lowest clerk, dare accept as much as a beaver-skin as a present from an Indian.

"Thus Apetak was troubled, because he had no way of showing his gratitude. The spring passed away, and the summer was about half gone, when

one evening Apetak, who had not been seen around the trading post for some weeks, suddenly returned.

"During the evening he asked for the privilege of having a few minutes' talk with my father. This of course was readily granted. To my father's great surprise, he had a strange request to make. And it was this. He wanted my father to allow him to blindfold his eyes, and in that condition take him on a journey of several days' duration, into the more remote wilderness. There would be travelling both by canoe and on land. Then at the right time he would uncover his eyes, and show him a sight that would please him very much indeed.

"This was a very strange proposition, and for a time my father hesitated; but knowing so well the reliable character of Apetak, and having in his constitution a good deal of the spirit of adventure, he at length consented. Apetak imposed some conditions upon him that were very stringent. One was, that he was under no circumstances to divulge to any one the fact that he was going away blindfolded. Another was, that when the journey was completed, and he was safely back at home, he was not to try and get there again. And the last was, that for so many years he was never even to mention the matter to anyone, white or Indian. These seemed rather hard conditions, but as father's curiosity had now been aroused, he at length consented, and in a day or two he said to his head clerk:

"'I think I will go off on a bit of an excursion for a few days.'

"As such trips were of frequent occurrence, there was no stir or curiosity excited. So leaving orders to the business during his absence, he and Apetak started off with their guns, blankets and usual outfit,

in a birch canoe. When away from the post, Apetak got out the mask, with which he blindfolded my father. It was a most thorough one. Not a ray of light penetrated it. When it was fastened on, Apetak said:

“‘It will be all right, and you will not be sorry for this trip.’

“Taking up his paddle again, Apetak really began the journey. At first he paddled the canoe round and round until my father was completely bewildered, and knew not the north from the south. Then on and on the strong Indian paddled for hours. Of course, he and my father talked to each other, and laughed and chatted away at a great rate. They landed at some portages, and Apetak helped father across. Then he went back for the canoe and supplies. Thus on they went for several days. At the camp fire, long after the sun was down, Apetak would remove the mask that blindfolded father, and leave it off until nearly daybreak. But he never took it off until he had so confused him, that when his eyes were uncovered he could not tell which way they had come. Early in the afternoon of about the fourth day, Apetak said:

“‘We are nearly at our journey’s end. Soon I will show you what I have brought you so far to see.’

“This was good news to my father, who had begun to feel this travelling so long, with the close covering on his face, very irksome.

“Shortly afterwards Apetak stopped paddling, and helping my father to land, he lifted his canoe out of the water and hid it carefully among the bushes. Then placing a large bundle on his back, including his axe and gun, he started on a land journey of

some miles. As my father was led along, although he could see nothing, he knew by the rush of the air, and the way they went up and down hill, that they were in a very broken country.

"‘Here is the place,’ said Apetak. ‘Now very soon I will uncover your eyes, but before I do it you must follow me into the earth.’

"Then he led my father into what seemed to be an opening in the side of a great hill or mountain. Entering in first, he told my father to walk close behind him, and keep his hand on him, so that he would not be lost. Sometimes the opening was so low that they had to stoop down, and in other places they had to squeeze through between the rocks.

"After a time, they stopped.

"‘Now,’ said Apetak, ‘I will take off the covering from your face, but you will see nothing till I make a light.’

"It was just as Apetak said. When the covering was removed from the eyes, so dense was the darkness that my father saw no better than when he had the mask on.

"However, that great bundle on Apetak’s back was composed of torches for this place. And when the Indian struck a light with his flint and steel, and lit up some of these torches, they could both see very well. At first, what my father saw was a great cave, like a large church or cathedral, in the hill or mountain. Strangely broken was it in places, and great columns like stalactites were very numerous. There were others that looked like filigree work. Said Apetak :

"‘Look at these great things that seem like old lead bullets.’

"‘Sure enough,’ said my father, ‘as my eyes

ough  
the  
that

soon  
must

o be  
tain.  
close  
at he  
as so  
laces

ering  
make

ering  
lark-  
n he

back  
And  
and  
ould  
saw  
dral,  
was  
were  
like

lead

eyes

A WOMAN'S SUCCESSFUL SHOT.







became accustomed to the place, lit up by these flaming torches, I discovered that a great deal that I thought was native rock, was metal. At first I thought it was lead, as, so long exposed there, it looked like old lead piping. But when I tried to scrape it with my knife, I found it was too hard. Then Apetak used his axe, and managed to cut down a little for me, and to scrape or hack it in some other places, and lo, it was pure silver!

“‘At this discovery,’ said my father, ‘I was amazed, for here, visible to the eye, were thousands of pounds of silver.’

“We both continued to look around, and examine it, until we had burnt all but the last torch. It seemed in some places as though the softer rocks had gradually dissolved and left the silver here just as we found it. In other parts it looked as though, at some remote period, intense fires had melted it, and it had run down and then hardened in these strange formations. Anyway, there it was, in vast quantities and in various forms.

“‘How did you find it?’ asked my father of Apetak.

“His answer was, ‘I was hunting in this part of the country, and I caught a fine silver fox by one hind leg in a trap. Just as I came up, he succeeded in cutting off his leg with his teeth, and thus got away. I, of course, ran after him, when he suddenly disappeared in the mouth of this cave. As his skin was so valuable, I hurried and got some birch bark and balsam gum and made a large torch, and tracked him by the blood from his leg into this place. My torch went out before I caught him, and I was very much frightened for fear I would die here, but I managed to find the opening, and got out. Then I made plenty of torches, and came in again. I had

to search quite a while before I found my fox, and succeeded in killing him. Then I looked around to see what kind of a place it was into which he had led me. For the first time I now saw all this metal. I thought first it was lead, and would supply me with bullets. I tried to cut it with my knife, but could not succeed; then I saw that it was good metal, which you call "silver," and I knew you would be pleased to see it. So that is the reason that I have brought you here.'

"Soon after my father was again blindfolded, and brought safely back to his home. He was very much pleased with his wonderful adventure, and honourably carried out his part of the agreement. He never in after years attempted to find the cave, nor did he even speak about it for many years. But it is there nevertheless, and some day the world will be startled by the story of its discovery, and of the richness of its hidden stores."

With intense interest the boys, as well as the others present, listened to this wonderful story. When it was concluded, very many were their questions and comments.

Then Sam, springing up, said:

"I move a hearty vote of thanks to Mr Ross for this splendid story about the cave, and when it is again discovered, may I be on hand."

Alec seconded the motion, and added:

"With great pleasure do I second this motion, and may I be a good second, close at hand, when Sam re-discovers the cave."

Frank put the motion, and it was carried unanimously.

Mr Ross duly responded, and as they listened to the fierce storms still raging without, and to the

howlings of the winds, their thoughts went out to those who were upon the stormy seas, and they heartily sang the beautiful hymn, wherein is the expressive prayer :

"O hear us when we cry to Thee,  
For those in peril on the sea."

## CHAPTER XII

Novel Fishing—Guns and Gaff-hooks—Frank's Plunge—  
Light-hearted Sam and His Story—Strange Battle—  
Pugnacious Jack-fish.

THE boys were quite fascinated by the wonderful and undoubtedly true story of the silver cave. Their imaginations were fired, and they longed to start off to find those treasures of silver, that, in that hidden cave, somewhere in the foothills of the Northern Rockies, are still concealed from man's curious, greedy gaze. Uncertain as the whereabouts of Captain Kidd's long-sought-for treasures, is the location of this cave of silver.

Long years ago Apetak, the Indian, died, and carried with him to the grave the knowledge of its whereabouts, and old Mr Ross made no attempt to find it. Neither did he state his impressions as to its locality, beyond what is mentioned in his recital of the story.

But it shows how a good Providence has His treasures of wealth for the generations to come. By-and-by, when it is needed, it will be found and utilised, as will the vast resources of other mineral wealth which this great new country has in reserve, when the supplies in older lands begin to be exhausted.

However, in a few short days, the story of the silver cave was less and less talked about, and the lads, with Indian attendants, were more or less busily employed in various undertakings.

Sam, who was an enthusiastic fly fisherman, was quite amazed and disappointed on finding that there was so little of his favourite kind of fishing in this part of the country. However, although there was a lack of fly fishing, there were



PECULIAR NET FISHING.

many other methods that were very successful. One plan that very much interested them was fishing with a net attached to the small end of a pole. This they used in the water in the same manner in which they had been accustomed to catch moths and butterflies with their lighter and frailer nets. They felt quite elated when a large white fish or lively trout was brought up in the almost invisible net. And they watched with

great interest the clever natives, who were most skilful in landing their fish.

One day Mr Ross organised a fishing excursion for them, equipping three canoes, with a couple of Indians in each to paddle them. He placed one boy in charge of each of the canoes, and sent them off in high spirits to see which canoe would return with the largest load of fish. To the boys alone was to be left the work of securing the fish. The Indians were to attend only to the paddling, and as the men in the canoe that succeeded in securing the greatest load were to receive, in addition to their wages, a flannel shirt apiece, they all entered keenly into the spirit of the expedition.

All that was needed in each boat for this kind of fishing was a good gun and a gaff-hook with a long handle. The boys decided to go to Jack River, which took its name from the number of jack-fish that used to swarm in its waters. Not many hours' paddling brought them to their destination, and then the fun began.

To start even, they drew up side by side and then, at a given word, away they all paddled towards a distant spot where the Indians knew the fish were likely to be found in large numbers. So evenly matched were the canoemen that they were not far apart when they arrived at the destined locality. So they widened the space between their canoes, and noiselessly paddled up to where the disturbed waters and many back and tail fins told of the presence of the gamey fish.

The first firing, it was decided, should be simultaneous, and after that, it was each canoe for itself, and they were not to meet till they reached Mr Ross's launch.

This method of fishing is very novel. The guns, heavily loaded with powder, are fired as nearly over the fish as is possible from the canoe. The concussion of the air seems so to stun them that they stiffen out on their backs, and there lie for a minute or so, apparently dead. The instant the men hunting them have fired, they immediately set to work with their long-handled gaff-hooks, and gather in as many as they can ere the fish return to consciousness; those not captured quickly swim off.

When all the captured have been secured, as the result of that one heavy discharge of the gun, the canoe is paddled away to another spot where it is observed that the fish are plentiful near the surface, and the process is repeated. So, for this kind of fishing, all that is necessary is a gun, a plentiful supply of powder, and the gaff-hook. A good deal of skill is required for the efficient management of the hook in seizing the fish, so that it can be successfully landed over the side into the canoe.

For a time the success of the boys was about equal, but they did not capture, after each shot, anything like the number of fish that their able-bodied, experienced Indians would have done. It is no easy matter to lift a twenty or thirty pound fish by a hook over the side of a canoe. The boat itself is so cranky, and the fish are generally so full of life and fight, that there is a good deal of risk and excitement, after all, about this kind of sport. It is no uncommon thing for an upset to occur, in the glorious uncertainty of capturing a large, gamey fellow who makes a stubborn fight.

The three canoes gradually separated, and to judge

by the frequent reports of the guns, they were having a good deal of sport. About eight p.m. they were all back at Sagastaweekee, and each had a different story to tell.

Frank had over a score of very fine fish, and had had only one fall into the water. He had hooked in his gaff a large, vigorous fish, and was making the most careful efforts to hang on to him, and to lift him over the side of the canoe. Just as he had him nicely out of the water, the fish, by a sudden, furious struggle, wrenched himself off the hook and fell back into the water.

Frank had been so firmly holding on that, when the weight of the fish was suddenly removed, he could not maintain his balance, and so, before an Indian could seize hold of him, he tumbled head first into the water on the other side of the canoe, and the last the Indians saw of him for some seconds were the bottoms of his moccasins. But he reappeared quickly, and was soon helped into the canoe, yet while he pluckily stuck to the sport for some time, the prudent Indians persuaded him to allow them to paddle him home early. So he had been the first to arrive.

Sam's canoe arrived somewhat later. He also had a goodly supply of fish. As he was saturated with water, the question was at once asked, "What had happened?"

At first he was a little glum about it, but the cry of, "Tell us all about it," had to be responded to.

It had been decided some time before that, on their returning from their different excursions, each one was to give, fairly and squarely, the story of his misadventures, blunders and failures, as well as of his



triumphs and successes. So Sam had to own up, and he began by the question:

"Have you any whales in these lakes or rivers?"

This odd question was met by a hearty laugh all round.

"Well, then, I'm after thinking you must have plenty of porpoises, or such things, for I am certain that it was one of these gentry I struck to-day."

Happy, light-hearted Sam; bright and cheery he ever was. It was a joy to hear him when, with a twinkle in his bright eye, he came out with his quaint remarks.

His question only excited the curiosity of his listeners the more, and so, amidst the laughter and call for the story of his mishaps, he had to let them have it.

"Well, the fact is, we were having a good time, and at every discharge of my gun I stunned quite a number, and succeeded in getting some of them into our canoe with the gaff-hook all right. Getting a little careless with my success, I asked the Indian sitting before me to let me stand in the very front of the canoe. At one place where I saw a big beauty, I stood up and reached out as far as I could, and, getting the gaff-hook under him, I gave him a great jerk to be sure and have it well hooked into him, when, lo and behold, before I could say 'Jack Robinson,' I was out head first into the water, hanging on to my end of the pole, while the monster of a fish was at the other, on his way to York Factory, it seemed to me."

"Why didn't you let go?" said Alec.

"Let go," he replied, with a comical look; "sure, the creature didn't give me time to let go, and then when I came to my senses, didn't I remember that

the gaff-hook, pole and all, belonged to Mr Ross; and how could I face him, and his gaff-hook on its way to York Factory?"

No one laughed more heartily than Mr Ross at the quaint answer. He had thoroughly entered into the enjoyment of this novel adventure.

"Well, where is the gaff-hook now?" he asked.

"Sure it's in the boat, sir, and the fish too," said Sam. "Do you think I'd have had the face to come home so early without it?"

This answer only more deeply interested the party, and Sam had to give the full account of his doings after his sudden jerk over the front of the canoe.

Some of these jack-fish grow to be six feet in length, and are very strong. It seems it was one of the very largest that Sam had the good, or ill, fortune to hook.

With a tremendous jerk he was fairly lifted out of the boat, and seemed to skim along on the water, with the fish, like a small tug in front, towing him along. Fortunately, it was in a large, shallow place, where the water was not more than four feet deep, and the fish being unable to dive, had to keep near the surface. As rapidly as possible the Indians used their paddles, and they were soon able to seize hold of Sam. They found him holding on to the one end of the gaff-hook, while the now almost exhausted fish was still securely fastened on the other. This was the Indians' statement of the adventure.

Sam's account was, that when he went out of that canoe so suddenly, he resolved to hang on at his end of that gaff-hook as long as the fish did at the

and  
way

s at  
into

he

said  
ome

the  
his  
the

gth,  
ery  
to

out  
ter,  
him  
ace,  
feet  
eep  
ans  
to  
on  
now  
on  
the

hat  
end  
the



SAM TOWED BY A JACKFISH.



other. It was a new sensation, and he enjoyed it amazingly, to be thus ploughing along through the water, towed by a fish. He felt sure that the fish could not keep it up very long, and the canoe would not be far off. So he resolved to hang on until the men picked them both up. After the first shock of the ducking, he said he much enjoyed the fun. The water was warm, and he knew that if he had to let go, he could easily swim until the canoe came to his assistance.

Alec had had no accidents or adventures. He had often gone out with older people fishing in the streams of his native country, where he had helped to land the spent salmon after they had been well played by the fishermen, and this training had come to his assistance here; so he had the greatest number of the finest fish and the largest—excepting, of course, this one monster that had played Sam such a trick.

Only for a short time in each summer can these jack-fish be successfully captured in this way. So during the next few days the boys went out several times, and had some rare sport without any very startling adventures.

One day, however, when resting on a high rock that overhung the deep waters of the lake they were visiting, they were spectators of a battle between two fierce jack-fish, that fought and grappled and tore each other with all the ferocity of bulldogs.

As such sights are extremely rare, we will give a description of this marine battle. A number of the female fish were first observed slowly passing through the clear waters, and depositing their roe on the gravelly bottom. Following in the rear were several

of the males. These were, as usual, extremely jealous of each other, but for a time made no attempt at hostilities.

It is a well-known fact that a person situated some height directly over water can see much further down into it than those who are close to it. So in this case the boys could see the fish distinctly, and also the gravelly bottom of the lake. While interested in watching their movements, suddenly there was a commotion among the fish, and the boys were excited and amazed to see two of the largest jack-fish quickly seize each other in their enormous jaws and make the most determined efforts to conquer. So securely locked together were their jaws that, in their desperate struggles, they several times rolled over and over in the water.

After a minute or two of this fierce struggling, they separated, and seemed to be in distress. But their fury was not spent, for, after circling around in the water a little, they again rushed at each other with the greatest speed—almost like two fierce rams. Then, with open mouths, they bit and tore each other, until, once more locking their jaws, they each exerted all his strength to conquer. Thus it went on, until they had had several fierce rounds in this way. How it would have ended we know not. As they fought they moved along the coast, and in order to see them to advantage the boys had to shift their position. One of them unfortunately rose up so high, that, the sun being behind him in the heavens, his shadow was cast on the waters over the two fierce combatants. As quick as a flash they let go their grip on each other, and dashed off in opposite directions.

The lads were much disappointed that the battle came to such an abrupt termination. They would have liked to have seen the strange conflict fought out to the end.

## CHAPTER XIII

Mission Village—Self-denying Toilers—Pleasant Visits—  
Flourishing School—Syllabic Characters—Competitive Sports—Archery—Foot Races—Wrestling—Swimming—Canoe Races.

NOT many miles from Sagastaweekee was an Indian mission village. There a devoted missionary, Mr Evans, with his brave wife, and a lady teacher, Miss Adams, were nobly toiling, and not unsuccessfully, in their efforts to christianise, and then to civilise the Indians. They were pursuing the right method in trying to christianise first. It has ever seemed an impossibility to get much of an abiding civilisation out of a pagan Indian. However, this devoted man with his helpers was not toiling in vain. It is true that they had not many encouragements in their efforts to civilise in a land where hunting and fishing were nearly the only ways by which a livelihood could be obtained.

One day there came from the mission an invitation to all the residents at Mr Ross's to attend the annual examination of the village school, and to observe the progress made by the Indian children in their studies, both in the Indian and English languages.

Mr Ross had taken, since the beginning of the mission, a great interest in the school, and not only attended these examinations but gave prizes for competition among the children.



Frank, Alec and Sam were delighted to be included among these invited, as their curiosity was aroused to see the Indian youngsters in the school. They had seen them at their sports, and had admired their cleverness with their bows and arrows, and had almost envied the skill and daring with which they could manage their light canoes in rapids, or on stormy waters.

When the morning arrived for the visit, Mr Ross sent on ahead a canoe well loaded with supplies for a substantial lunch for the children when the examinations were over, and he gave a hint to the boys that if they had anything extra lying around that they did not specially need, they would doubtlessly have an opportunity to make some little, dark-eyed, swarthy-faced Indian children rejoice. The hint was gladly taken, and in due time they all embarked in their canoes, and, adding their own strokes to those of the strong Indians who had been secured by Mr Ross, they were at the mission village before nine o'clock. They met with a very cordial greeting from Mr and Mrs Evans, and also from Miss Adams.

It was a great pleasure to the boys to see the Indian children in the school. Very frequently when the weather was fine, Mr Ross had brought his family and guests to church on Sunday mornings, but as up to the present time the young white gentlemen had not visited the mission on a week-day all they saw now was novel and interesting. It was arranged that the school examinations should take place in the forenoon, then, after they had partaken of the handsome lunch which Mr and Mrs Ross had prepared for them, they were to have the usual games and sports in the afternoon.

A number of prizes were to be contended for by the

young Indians. It is true that from a civilised standpoint these prizes would not be considered of much value, but by these young Indians they were much coveted. And then the honour of being the winner is just as much prized by them as it has ever been in more highly-favoured lands.

The missionary had the worthy idea in his mind that, as these native races have so little literature in their own language, the sooner they learned English the better for them. The result was that all the lessons were in the two languages, with a decided preference for English as their studies advanced.

This was the first opportunity the boys had had of seeing the methods by which Mr Evans's syllabic characters were taught to the Indians. With a home-made blackboard, and a very white kind of clay as a substitute for chalk, these syllabic characters were put down upon the board, like the alphabet, and there studied like the a, b, c's, and committed to memory. The peculiarity about it, as its name "syllabic" implies, is that each character is a syllable, and so there is really no spelling in the language.

These are phonetic in character, and so when the thirty-six characters are impressed upon the memory all that remains to do is to open the book, be it Bible, Testament, hymn-book, prayer-book or catechism, and begin to read. No long, tedious efforts at learning to spell first words of one syllable, then of two syllables, and so on; each character is a syllable, and the method is so simple that the intelligent boys and girls learn to read in their own language in a few weeks. Even many of the old people, when they renounce their pagan life and become Christians, readily get to understand these characters and learn to read.

With the mastery of English, and reading in the

ordinary way, the work is very much slower. Still even here there was some progress, and the visitors were all pleased with the intelligence and aptitude of the scholars, both boys and girls. Mr Ross, who understood their language perfectly, at Mr Evans's request, conducted the examinations, and Mrs Ross presented the prizes.

After the hearty lunch, which was very much enjoyed by the youngsters, for Indians have glorious appetites, the sports and competitions for various prizes began.

The highest prize, a good gun, presented by Mr Ross for archery, was won by a son of Mamanomatum, "Big Tom," and richly did he deserve it. At a hundred yards he sent every arrow of his well-filled quiver whizzing through a paper hoop not two feet in diameter. For this prize there were several competitors, and some of the lads did well, but only the winner sent every one through, so this contest was easily decided. The junior prize for archery was won by the sturdy little son of the chief.

The "many arrow" prize was not so easily won, as there were many competitors, and they were evenly matched. This is a competition to see who can get the greatest number of arrows into the air at the same time. The method is this: Each archer, in turn, fills his quiver with arrows, and places it on his back, as he would to carry it in hunting. Then he steps out a few feet in front of the crowd, who, to escape accident from falling arrows, are all behind him. He is allowed to feather the first arrow in the bow string, and then at a given signal, he shoots. His object is to see how many arrows he can shoot into the air before the one first fired reaches the ground. It is a very interesting

sight to watch a contest of this kind. The eye can hardly follow not only the arrows but the rapid movements of the archer as he draws the arrows and shoots them with all his might up into the blue sky above. Eight, ten, yes, sometimes even a dozen arrows, are thus sent with wondrous rapidity, sometimes following so closely that it seems as though some succeeding one would catch up to the ones just on ahead. The greater rapidity of the arrow just



THE STURDY SON OF THE CHIEF.

leaving the bow than that of those some hundreds of feet up, adds to this illusion.

This was ever with the Indians, ere the introduction of guns, a very favourite sport, not only in these forest regions, but among the wild, warlike tribes of the prairies. Exciting contests were numerous, and sometimes rivals from different tribes contended for the honours in this and other kinds of archery practice, and feats of skill with bow and arrow.

Catlin's brush has given us one of these exciting scenes.

After the various kinds of archery competitions, the foot-races began. The first was the long race over a course that had been marked out for two miles along a shore and back. It was not all an unbroken sandy beach, but in some places there were rocky obstructions, and in others dense underbrush. It was a course that could well be styled good, bad and indifferent. It was one, not only to test the endurance of the lads, but to develop their judgment and quickness of decision when in a part full of difficulties. About a dozen competitors entered for this race, and there were three prizes that were well earned.

Then there were races for shorter distances, which were well run, especially those by the little boys and girls.

When the half-mile race, which was open to all comers, was about to be run, Alec rather mischievously suggested to Sam that he ought to enter for it, as his practice in that famous escapade with the bear, where he ran with such marvellous rapidity might have turned out a good training for this occasion. Frank added his banter to that of the others, and to the surprise of all, Sam sprang up, and asked permission from Mr Ross, who was somewhat amused at the request. But though he felt sure Sam would be hopelessly beaten, he readily granted his desire. Surprises often come from unexpected quarters. Sam quickly stripped off his outer garments, and, much to the Indians' delight, took his place among them. Over twenty competitors started. The race was a spurt from the beginning. To the astonishment and delight of the whites,

Sam came in second, being only beaten by E-yah-pa-sis, a noted runner, and whose name means "the young deer."

Old Kapastick, the chief, was so delighted with Sam's success that he presented to him a second prize, a pair of beautiful Indian moccasins.

After these races came the wrestling matches, and as Sam's success had fired the ardour of both Alec and Frank, and had raised him so in the eyes of the Indians, they asked permission to try their sturdy English and Scottish strength against the supple agility of these lithe Indians. For good reasons Mr Ross permitted only one of them to enter into this competition, and as Frank had a school reputation among his chums at home, he was selected to uphold the honour of the pale-face against the dark-skins. Eight wrestlers entered the lists, so there were four pairs, and the conquerors in each bout had to wrestle with each other, so that eventually the prize-winner would have thrown three competitors.

At this time there was great interest in wrestling contests, but in these later years, being objected to by so many, they have almost disappeared.

The four competitors were placed in pairs upon the green soft grass, and warned not to get angry, but each to do the best he could to throw his opponent. It was "catch as you can," and get your opponent down until both of his shoulders, at the same time, touch the ground.

Face to face, and with their hands extended, so that they just touched their antagonists', they waited the "How" of the chief to begin the exciting struggle.

Frank was matched against a splendid young fellow, lithe and supple as an eel. So quick was

he, that, as Frank afterwards said, before he had more than heard the word for "go," the fellow seemed to wind himself around me, and twist all over me!" But Frank had what English boys know as the power to hold his feet, and, in spite of the cyclonic attack, he stood firm and solid, merely on the defensive, until he got a home grip that suited him, and then with one quick, skilful twist he laid out his opponent so neatly on the grass that the crowd gave him quite a cheer, a difficult thing for an Indian crowd to do.

The other three pairs of contestants being Indians, and up to all Indian wiles, struggled much longer ere the victors were announced. Then the four conquerors in these struggles were again matched, two against two.

When Frank tried his favourite trick which had won him his first victory, he found that his second antagonist had, although busy at the time with his first opponent, observed it, and was not to be so easily caught. Then Frank, after they had each tried various schemes well-known to good wrestlers, very suddenly seized him, fair and square around the waist, as they stood face to face, and by what the boys know as the "back-hold," he threw him neatly and cleverly on his back. Thus Frank, by throwing these two, had won the right to contend in the final struggle for the prize with the other, who, like himself, had thrown two opponents.

Very excited, yet very good-humoured were the people, whites and Indians. There was no betting, nor anything else to make anyone mad or angry. It was a friendly tussle of strength, between young lads, under the eye of the missionary, who was ever at the front in their sports, and hence



strengthened his marvellous influence over them for good.

The final struggle was a very close and prolonged one. Each had his clever tricks and plans, but they were well met by the other. After a time Frank thought he had a splendid back hold, and suddenly tried to finish the contest as he had the second one, but he had a different lad this time. His supple *vis-à-vis* so quickly turned around in his grasp, that when Frank landed him on the ground, the laughing Indian lad was fair on his face, instead of on his shoulders. Mr and Mrs Ross and the mission party led in the applause, as they witnessed the clever trick. Up again they were and at it with varying success. There was one method (sometimes tried elsewhere) that Frank had in his mind, when he had failed in his other plans, which he had before, but not often, been successful in trying. He hesitated to try it here, from the fact that his supple opponent was so slightly clothed, there was but little upon which to get much of a grip. All these Indian lads had stripped to their moccasins, leggings, and loin cloths, while Frank had only taken off his coat and vest. However, as he was not able to succeed in other ways, he determined to try it, but to ensure success he must not let his opponent have any suspicion of it. So as they struggled in various ways, Frank several times so gripped him that he lifted him off his feet in a way that, after the first few times, the Indian seemed to be amused at. This was just what Frank wanted, and he let him have his laugh, while, alert against any surprise, he watched for the right moment, and then suddenly, when it came, he gripped him by the loin cloth, and so

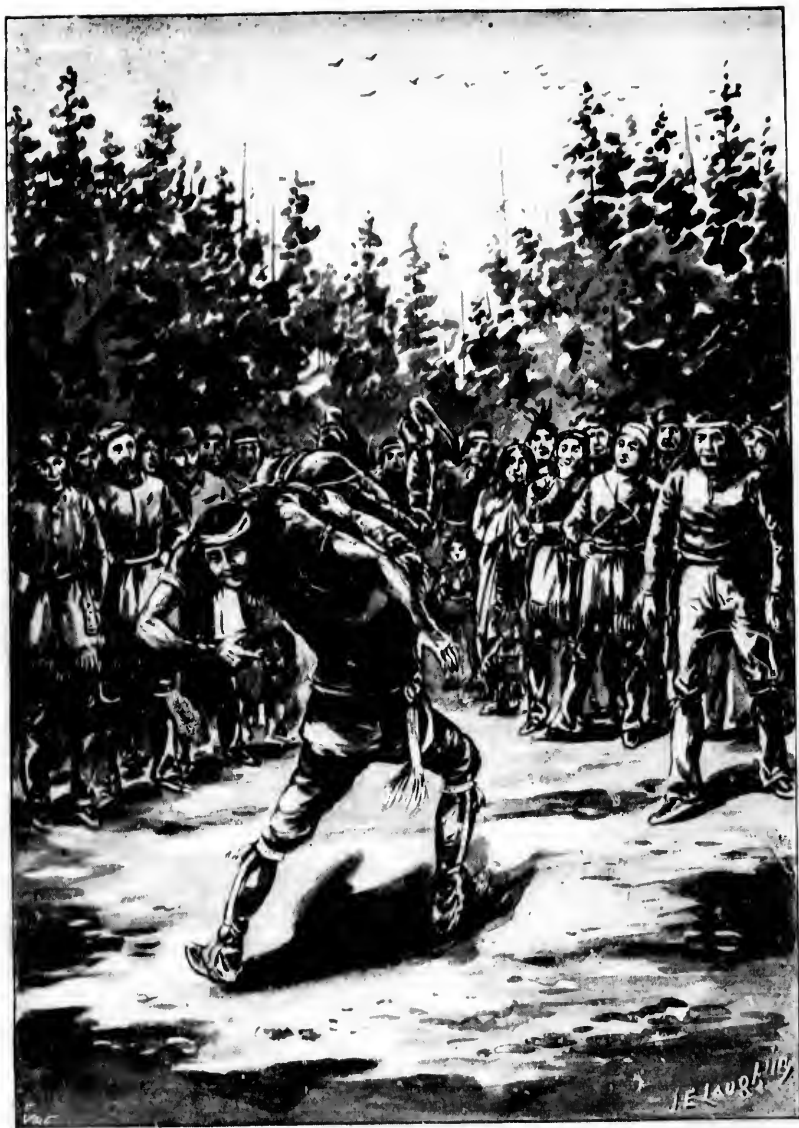


em  
ro-  
ans,  
a  
old,  
he  
his  
and  
the  
his  
Mrs  
use,  
they  
one  
had  
ans,  
ess-  
the  
ned,  
of a  
their  
ank  
ver,  
he  
must  
So  
eral  
his  
the  
just  
his  
ched  
n it  
so

45

ad  
ad,  
re,  
ed  
ad

at  
t  
e  
f  
r



THE WRESTLING MATCH.

completely threw him over his head, that he had him on his back, with both shoulders on the ground, ere the crowd, quick and watchful as they were, could realise how it had been done. A cheer greeted this well-earned victory, and Frank said he had had enough for one day.

Frank was the idol of the Indian lads from that hour, and to many a one had he to show how that clever feat had been performed, until they were able to do it themselves, to the astonishment of Indian boys from other villages, with whom they competed.

As the spirit of emulation was up in every heart, Frank and his comrades went in for the swimming contest, which took place in the beautiful bay not far from the spot where stands the school-house.

The white lads held their own for a time, but as the course marked out was new to them, and they were out of practice, the Indian lads, who had been in almost daily drill for the event, until they were as much at home in the water as otters, gradually forged ahead, and not being so fleshy as their white competitors, nearly all of them came in as victors.

However, our boys were glad to have had the glorious swim, and only regretted that, amidst the many other sports in which they had had such pleasure since their arrival, they had not given more attention to swimming. Alec was not slow in saying that he believed if they had been in practice for a few days they would not have all been at the tail-end of the string at the finish.

The closing contests were the canoe races. For them the prizes were given by the Hudson Bay Company's officials. These gentlemen were present at the previous contests, and had been very much

interested. First, there were races where only one lad was in each canoe. In addition to paddling out to, and around, a certain island, they were, when out in deep water, twice to upset their canoes, and, unaided, get into them again. This was rare sport, and while to persons unacquainted with these youngsters who are as much at home out and in the water as beavers, it would seem dangerous, such a thing as any of them coming to harm is unknown. The cleverness with which they would turn over and upset the canoe, and then get into it—never over the side but at the end—was marvellous.

These various races, some with one and two, and others with four Indian lads in them, were well-contested, and gave great pleasure to all the spectators.

At the close, the Indian boys, who, perhaps, were none too well satisfied with the white lads for having carried off both a first and second prize, went to Mr Ross, and through him challenged the white boys to a canoe race. This our lads promptly accepted, but, of course, demurred to the canoe upsetting process, and climbing in again. This was agreed to by the Indian boys, and it was decided the race was to be to a large, rocky island about a mile out, and back. They were to paddle twice around the island ere they returned on the home stretch.

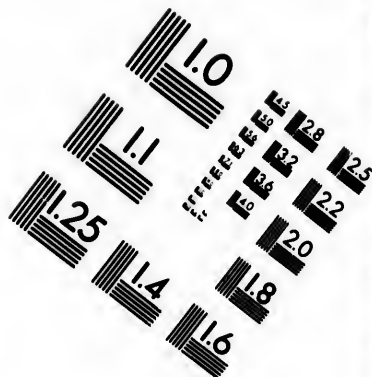
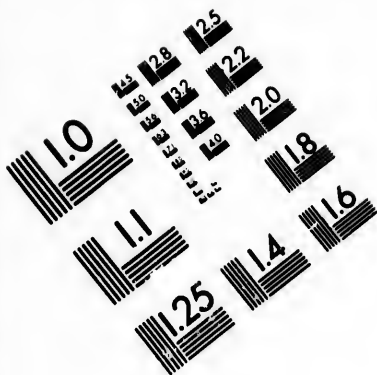
Two canoes were selected, and the Hudson Bay chief factor was appointed the judge. Ever since the arrival of the boys in the country they had been learning how to manage the frail but beautiful birch canoe, and so were no unworthy competitors with these young Indians, whose summer lives were

almost all spent in paddling their light canoes. A good start was made, and while the alert Indians secured the advantage, the strong, steady paddling of the heavier white boys enabled them, ere the island was reached, to get their craft a good half length ahead of their dusky opponents'. But here at the island, the long practice of the Indians in the management of the canoe gave them a decided advantage. While Alee, who plied the stern paddle, and was responsible for the turning round the island, was cautiously and safely doing his work, the Indians, with a flash and a laugh, went round and round, cutting off corners, where he never dreamed there was sufficient depth of water, and were away on the home stretch with so many lengths to their advantage that, in spite of a magnificent finish, our boys were utterly unable to catch them up.

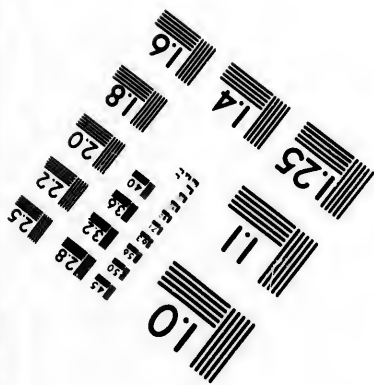
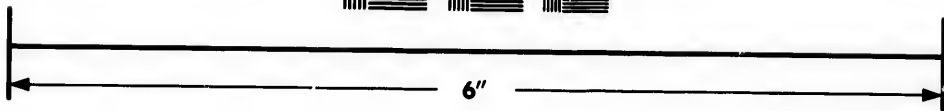
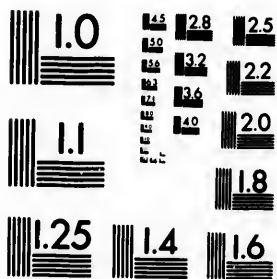
The Indians winning this race put everybody in the best of humour, and when our party paddled home in the long summer gloaming, it was voted to have been one of the most delightful of days.

Good resulted from this visit in various ways. From that day forward, Frank and his comrades were very much more interested in mission work. Although their families were of different churches in the home land, they were all interested in missionary operations for the benefit and uplifting of earth's millions who were yet in the darkness of paganism, and here for the first time the boys had the opportunity of seeing for themselves something that was being done for these once degraded red men, around whom a halo of such romantic interest has ever gathered. Here were unmistakable evidences of good effected, both to the bodies, and to the souls of these interesting people.





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

10  
5  
4.5  
4  
3.6  
3.2  
2.8  
2.5  
2.2  
2.0  
1.8  
1.6

10  
5  
4.5  
4  
3.6  
3.2  
2.8  
2.5  
2.2  
2.0  
1.8  
1.6



Then it was instructive to these sturdy, active, white boys to come in contact with young Indians in their sports and hunting, and to observe the points in which each excelled, and to study the reasons why.

In the management of the canoe, white boys never learn to equal Indian lads ; neither could it be expected that they could attain to the accuracy with which the Indians use their bows and arrows ; but in all trials of physical strength, the Anglo-Saxon ever excels, and surprising as it may appear to some, in shooting contests with gun or rifle, the pale faces are always able to hold their own.

## CHAPTER XIV

Conjurers — Old Tapastanum — Boasting — Challenge  
accepted — Medicine Man's Tent — Bogus Bullet —  
Detected — Conjuror's Defeat and Fall.

NOT long after the visit to the mission and the school, Mr Ross was visited by a number of old Pagan medicine men and conjurers, the most noted of them being old Tapastanum, who, having heard of the arrival of the young gentlemen from across the sea to the family at Sagastaweekee, were anxious to make them a visit of ceremony. Tapastanum's principal reason for a ceremonial visit was that he should not be eclipsed by "the black-coat man with the Book."

Mr Ross, while receiving these old men, as he received all Indians, in a civil manner, was not at all kindly disposed towards them, as he knew their influence was harmful, and that they were an oppression and a curse to the people. Their very presence in an Indian village is a source of terror and fear. They never hunt or fish themselves as long as they can frighten other people into being blackmailed by them.

The coming of these men much excited Sam and Alec, who had heard such extraordinary things about them. Some firmly believe that they are in league with the devil, and by his direct assistance are able to perform all the wonderful things of

which they boast. Others, however, believe that they are rank impostors. The boys, who had heard so many conflicting things about these conjurers, tried to coax their host to get them to show off some of their pretended power.

For a time Mr Ross, who considered them only clever scoundrels, or unmitigated humbugs, objected, as he did not wish to seem in any way to encourage them. However, as they, from his reluctance to put them to the test, became exceedingly boastful of their power to do wonderful things, it was one day decided to give them an opportunity.

"What do you say you can do?" asked Frank of old Tapastanum.

"Do?" he replied. "I can so conjure that you cannot hit me with a bullet, or tie me so that I cannot spring up loose, and fire will not burn me nor water drown me."

"All right," said Frank, "one thing at a time. We will try the first and see if we cannot hit you with a bullet."

"What you give?" was the request of the old fellow.

"Oh, indeed, that is what you are after. Well, what do you want?"

At first his demands were very unreasonable, but after some bickering it was decided that if he stood the ordeal he was to get an agreed amount of flour, tea, sugar and tobacco. It was also settled that the ordeal should come off the next day. The conjurer said he would spend the night with his medicine drum and sacred medicine bag to call back his familiar spirit, who might be away hunting.

The boys discussed the coming contest very much, and of course were profoundly interested. They had

learned much since their coming into the country about these strange, wild, fearsome people, and this, with what they had read in other days, filled them with great curiosity to see what would be the outcome.

With Mr Ross and the family the matter was well talked over, and it was determined, as Mr Ross considered the conjurer who was to go through the ordeal, an unmitigated fraud, that he should be taught a lesson that he and his cronies would never forget. When the morning arrived the old fellows were there in good time, and the ordeal, which was to be by bullet, was decided upon.

The conjurer selected for the ordeal had not proceeded far in his talk before he asked to see his pay laid down at his wife's feet. This was brought out and measured to his satisfaction, with the understanding that it was not to be his unless he succeeded. His preparations were soon completed. Aided by his comrades, a small conjuring tent was made by sticking some long, green limber poles in the ground and bending them over like bows until the other ends were also made fast in the earth. Then over these poles a cover, made by sewing a number of dressed deer-skins together, was thrown. Taking his medicine bag and magic drum into this tent, the conjurer disappeared. Soon the monotonous drumming began. In addition there were heard the barks and howls and cries of nearly all the animals of the forest and prairies. The sounds were like those proceeding from a wild beast show when all the animals are let loose and are uttering their discordant notes. The tent quivered as though in a cyclone. Thus for a time it went on, the drum beating, the beasts howling, the tent quivering, until

it seemed utterly inexplicable how one man could create such a din. Of the boys, Sam was most excited at these strange proceedings, and much to the amusement of those around, he said:

"I'm thinking the safest place would be on the top of the house if all of those reptiles should break loose."

In the meantime the conjurer now began crying out in his own language.

"To help me, he is coming, my own familiar spirit. Soon the bullet cannot pierce me ; soon waters cannot drown me ; soon fires cannot burn me. To help me he is coming ! coming ! coming !!"

Thus on he went, while the drumming and howlings were almost incessant.

Mr Ross, who had resolved that there should be no nonsense, had asked one of his servants, who was an unerring shot, to do the firing. In the meantime one of the conjurer's associates had asked to see the gun that was to be used, and kindly offered to load it. Suspicions were at once aroused by this request, but wishing to see through the man's trick, Mr Ross did not oppose his wish. A good gun was sent for, and also some powder and bullets. Full measure of powder was poured into the gun, and the usual wadding was well driven down upon it. When Mr Ross had selected a bullet, the friend of the conjurer, with a great pretence of awe, asked to see it, and holding it in his hand, said :

"This is the bullet that the familiar spirit will turn aside."

Mr Ross let him look at it, and saw him handling it with great apparent reverence, but he also saw him quickly and deftly change it for another bullet.

That's your game is it," said Mr Ross, but not

aloud. After a little more humbug, the bullet was handed back to be dropped into the muzzle of the gun.

If Mr Ross's thoughts could have been heard, they would have been something like this:

"I have seen through that little trick, and will show you that two can play at that game."

And so, without exciting the suspicion of the Indian, whose trick he had detected, he changed the bullet for another, which he dropped into the gun. When the wadding was driven in and packed upon it, the confederate of the conjurer asked for the privilege of being allowed also to help to ram it down. Mr Ross saw his meaning, and cheerfully granted it. The weapon was now loaded and ready for use. All this time the drumming and the conjuring had continued, with all their accompaniments of howls and shrieks.

In a short time a shrill, low whistle, like the call of some bird, was heard, and Mr Ross observed that it was from the lips of the old Indian who had pretended to examine the bullet with such awe, but who had in reality exchanged it for a perfectly harmless one. He and the conjurer were associates in the trickery. The sham bullet had been made in this way. A pair of bullet moulds had been heated quite hot, and then some bear's fat, which is like lard, had been put inside of them. Holding the moulds shut, and placing them in very cold water, they kept turning them round until the melted fat had hardened into a thin shell exactly the size of a bullet. Then a small puncture was made through this thin casing of fat, and the interior carefully filled up with fine sand. It was not difficult to stop up the little orifice with some more fat. It was then carefully coloured like

a bullet, and at a distance could hardly be distinguished from one. When put in a gun and well pounded with a ramrod, of course it would break all to pieces, and, when fired, at anything like an ordinary distance for ball firing, would be perfectly harmless.

But Mr Ross's cleverness had been too much for the rogues, and so he had changed the bogus affair for a genuine bullet of lead. To his servant who was to fire he had explained exactly how matters were, and had said to him :

"Do not kill the rascal, but give him a wound that will forever stop his boastings and break his power over the poor, deluded people, who firmly believe he can do what he has so boastfully declared."

The low, shrill whistle-call had made a great change upon the conjurer in the tent. He was now all boastfulness, and his cries were like the shouts of triumph.

"Waters cannot drown me; bullets cannot pierce me; fires cannot burn me."

"Are you sure you are ready?" said Mr Ross.

Shouting his defiance, the conjurer came out from the tent, and, walking to a place where he knew the fine sand in the bullet of bear's grease could not hurt him, he boldly stood up, and, stretching out his hands, defied the shooter to do his best.

"You are sure, are you, that bullets will not hurt you?" said Mr Ross.

Very haughty was the conjurer's reply. Then said Mr Ross again :

"If you are hurt no one will be to blame."

"No, indeed," was the conjurer's reply, "for I have given the challenge, and my familiar spirit has told me that bullets cannot pierce me."

tin-  
well  
eak  
an  
ctly

for  
fair  
who  
ters

hat  
wer  
eve

reat  
now  
uts

rce

om  
the  
urt  
ds,

urt

id

ve  
d





DEFEAT OF THE MEDICINE MAN.

"If you are struck then you will give up your conjuring, and go and hunt for your own living like other people?"

He hesitated for a moment, but the low, shrill whistle was once more heard, and so he fairly shouted out:

"If bullets can pierce me I will forever give up my conjuring, and destroy my magic drum and medicine bag."

"All right," said Mr Ross; then, turning to his servant, he said, "Now, Baptiste, fire."

Taking deliberate aim, the man fired, and, as the report rang out, from one of the uplifted hands of the conjurer, who was standing about fifty yards away, there fell a finger, as neatly cut off by the bullet as though a surgeon's knife had done the work.

With a howl of rage and pain, most decidedly un-Indian-like, the conjurer began dancing about, much to the amusement of the boys, who a moment before were pale with a pent-up excitement. For it was indeed trying to look on and see in the hands of a skilful marksman a gun loaded with ball, and pointed at this boastful man who was willing to put his magic against the skill of the finest shot of the country.

Much to the surprise of all but Mr Ross and one or two others, who saw through the trick, the old fellow, with his wounded hand still profusely bleeding, rushed over to his confederate and began abusing him most thoroughly for having deceived him.

This attack the man resented, and a first-class quarrel was the result. Around them gathered numbers of Indians, and, in the mutual recriminations of these two, the truth came out, and the people saw that they had long been deluded by a

pair of impostors. From that day they were discredited men, and never after regained any power or influence.

That evening Mr Ross explained the whole affair to the boys. He showed them the bogus bullet, and explained to them how it was made. The boys admitted that it was a clever trick, and were not satisfied until they had made several themselves in the manner described.

Thus ended their first and last experience with Indian conjurers, and it thoroughly convinced them that they are only cunning impostors.

## CHAPTER XV

Outing at the Old Fort—Alec and Mustagan's Shooting Contest ; or, Gun *versus* Bow and Arrow—Shooting the Swans—Was Sam Cross-eyed—The Return Trip—The Escape of the Doe and Fawn from the Wolf.

As Mr Ross had quite recovered, it was resolved to go again on an extended trip to the land in the region of Montreal Point, and have some hunting in that section of country. Some Indian hunters had come in from that place, and reported the entire absence of wolves. This was not to be wondered at, from the number that had been shot in the fierce conflict which there took place. It is also a fact well known to wolf hunters that, when a pack has been severely defeated, the survivors at once retreat to some distant region.

As the weather was very fine, Mrs Ross and the younger members of the family accompanied them as far as to the Old Fort. They travelled in a large and roomy canoe especially made for them. It was manned by four Indians, who were very proud of their charge. Frank and Sam, with an Indian hunter, occupied another canoe, while Mr. Ross had with him Alec and Mustagan.

The ducks and other gamey birds were numerous, and they had some good shooting from their canoes as they paddled along. At times they were able to

fire into large flocks, then again they tried their skill on a single bird as it rapidly flew by.

Said Mustagan to Alec:

"You take gun, I take bow and arrow, and we see who shoot best."

"All right," said Alec, "I'll try."

So it was decided that they were to fire alternately, and Alec was to try first; if he missed, Mustagan was to shoot. Next time Mustagan was to fire first, and then Alec. The one who killed five ducks or other game first was to be considered victor. Mr Ross, who entered heartily into the spirit of the contest, took the steering paddle while the white lad and the old Indian tried their skill. It was a contest between gun and powder *versus* bow and arrow.

Soon a fine Mallard duck came flying along. Alec let drive at it, and missed. Quick as a flash Mustagan's bow was up, and his arrow sighted and sent after it with such accuracy that it caught the duck fairly under one of the wings, killing it instantly.

"The best shot I ever saw," shouted Alec, in genuine admiration.

The head of Mustagan's arrow was the thigh bone of a wild swan, which is almost solid, and makes a capital arrow head for duck shooting, as it is heavy and can be made so sharp as to pierce easily the body of the game.

The next object was a solitary beaver sitting on a bank, quite unconcerned. Mr Ross said afterwards that in all probability it was an old, sullen fellow that had been driven away by the others from some distant beaver house and had come and dug a burrow somewhere in that bank and was living there alone.

As it was Mustagan's turn to shoot first, he care-

fully selected his heaviest arrow, the head of which was a piece of barbed steel. Having examined the shaft to see that it was perfectly straight, he shot it with all his strength. No need for Alec to fire, for deep down into the skull of the animal had the steel head gone, instantly killing him. When it was lifted into the canoe, Alec was surprised at the size of its tail, and more than amazed when told that it was one of the luxuries of the country. It was one of the favourite dishes at the supper that evening. The other luxuries Mr Ross added were the bear's paws and the moose's nose.

As they paddled on, Mustagan suddenly shaded his eyes for a moment, then quickly said, "Wap-i-sew! Wap-i-sew!" (Swans, swans.)

Word was quickly shouted to the other boats of their coming, and to try and shoot some of them if possible. Swans' feathers are much prized in that land for beds. Their meat, however, is not considered equal to that of the wild goose. As they fly with great rapidity, they were not long in coming within range. There was a large flock of them, and they were flying, as they usually do, in a straight line. This flock must have risen up very recently, as they were not more than fifty feet above the water.

"I killed beaver. Your turn first now," said Mustagan to Alec. "But I fire just after you."

Alec had, at Mr Ross's suggestion, dropped a half-dozen big buck-shots in the barrel of his gun on the top of the charge of duck-shot. The instant the first swan of the long, straight line of them was in range he fired. To his amazement, while the first and second passed on unhurt, the third swan dropped suddenly into the water. And a second or two after another, about the twentieth in the line, also fell.

Soon reports from other guns were heard as the friends in the other canoes in the rear fired; and Mrs Ross was delighted to have the feathers of six beautiful white swans to take home with her when she returned.

The most perplexed one in the party for the time being was Alec. Mr Ross had observed it, and half suspecting the cause, asked what it was that was bothering him. His answer was:

"I cannot understand how it should have happened, that when I aimed and fired at the first swan, it and the second should pass on unhurt, and the third fall dead.

He was very much surprised when Mr Ross explained that he had not calculated for the speed with which the wild swan flies. Although such a large and heavy bird, it flies with a rapidity excelled by very few. Wild ducks and geese are easily left behind by the beautiful and graceful swans.

When the birds were picked up, the journey was resumed, and the friendly contest between Alec and Mustagan continued.

Soon a large flock of ducks flew over them. It being Mustagan's turn, he shot, and as his arrow returned it was in the heart of a splendid duck. Alec, watching his opportunity, fired where a number were flying closely together, and had the good fortune to bring down four at the one shot. This of course gave him the victory—and no congratulations could have been more kindly or sincere than were those of the big-hearted Mustagan.

In the meantime, those in the other canoes had their own adventures and excitements. Sam had the good fortune to kill one of the swans, although he said after that he thought he must have been cross-eyed



when he fired, as the one which fell was the third or fourth behind the one at which he aimed.

In his amusing way, Sam's irrepressible spirit was up, and in a half-moralising strain, at such erratic shooting, he said :

"Indeed, when I saw that swan fall, I began to think I must have been like the old schoolmaster of whom my father used to tell in the old times, when he was a boy, that when he was angry would shout out, 'Will that boy I am looking at stand up.' And do you believe it, ten or a dozen would rise, trembling, to their feet, in different parts of the schoolhouse."

The Old Fort was reached early in the afternoon, and at one of the favourite camping places on the western side of the rushing waters of the great river that comes pouring out of Lake Winnipeg, they went ashore. The active Indians soon had abundance of dry wood cut and gathered. The fires were soon brightly burning, and the meal prepared. Around it clustered the happy hungry ones, and very much did they enjoy their dinner in the sunshine, amidst the beauties of this romantic spot.

Mrs Ross and the children, escorted by Mr Ross and our three lads, went for a long ramble through the woods, looking for some rare and beautiful ferns which here abound. They succeeded in getting quite a number of fine specimens, which they carefully dug up, to be planted in the grounds around Sagastaweekee. Some lovely wild flowers were also found, and several small, young, mountain-ash trees were dug up and carried home.

After this delightful ramble, which was without any exciting adventure, they all returned to the camp, where they found that tea had been prepared for them by the thoughtful Indian canoemen. When



this was partaken of, Mrs Ross and the young people embarked in their capacious canoe for the return trip, and under the vigorous paddling of their four canoe-men reached Sagastaweekee before midnight.

The only excitement they had on the way was the seeing a beautiful deer and its young fawn swimming in the water a long way out from the shore. They gave chase and caught up to the beautiful, frightened creatures. Mrs Ross would not allow the men to kill either of them, as she did not want the children to be shocked by the death of such beautiful, timid animals, especially as the solicitude manifested by the mother deer was very interesting to observe.

At first, even the experienced Indians were perplexed at the sight of the deer, with her young fawn, in this broad water, so far from land. Generally, while the fawns are so small, the mother deer keeps them hidden in the deep, dark forests, only going to them when it is necessary to suckle them.

It was not very long before these Indians had an idea of the cause of the unusual conduct of this deer. So they began watching very carefully the distant shore, from which the deer had come, and, after a while, one who had been shading his eyes gave a start and whispered earnestly :

“Wolf! wolf!”

And sure enough it was, for there, trotting up and down on the shore, was a great, fierce, northern grey wolf.

He must have got on the trail of the deer, and alarmed her, but not before she had time to rush from her retreat with the fawn, and spring into the water. They must have got quite a distance out from shore before the wolf reached the water, as the Indians said, judging by the way the wolf ran up and down on the

beach, trying to find the trail, he had not seen them enter the water.

Wolves do not take to water like bears. It is true, they can swim when necessary, but they cannot make much of a fight in the water. A full-grown deer can easily drown a wolf that is rash enough to dare to attack him in the deep water. The Indians would have liked to have gone ashore and make an effort to get in the rear of the wolf, and have a shot at him, but this was at present out of the question. So they paddled in between the swimming deer and fawn and the shore from whence they had come, thus enabling them to escape to the side opposite from the wolf. Shortly after, as the wolf, angry at being baffled of his prey while the scent was so hot on the shore, came running along in plain sight, the Indians fired a couple of bullets at him. These, while not killing him, went near enough to cause him to give a great jump of surprise and alarm, and to disappear suddenly into the forest.

"Some time soon we get that wolf," said one of the Indians.

How he did get it, we will have him tell us later on.

## CHAPTER XVI

The Old Fort again—Aurora Borealis—Camp Annoyances—  
Unexpected Arrivals—Fur-Traders—Head Winds—  
Camp-fire Yarns.

WE must now return to our other friends whom we left at the Old Fort. Some days were spent at this favourite old hunting-ground.

With Mr Ross the boys visited the site of their former camp, where the cyclone wrought such havoc, and where they had such a narrow escape. They were all amazed, as they examined the trunks of the trees twisted off, and saw how, like a swath of grass cut through a meadow, they had fallen before the irresistible hurricane which had swept through the dense forest.

Never had any of them seen anything to equal this, and they were very grateful for providential deliverance. They investigated the rocks and boulders, and Mr Ross gave them his ideas as to the formation of the great prairies of the West, over which he had so often wandered, and where Sam, Alec and Frank expected in a year or so to spend some happy months.

To the boys, the evening camp fires on the rocks, the rippling waters of lake or river at their feet, and dark background of unexplored forest, the picturesque Indians, the preparations for the evening meal (to satisfy such glorious appetites) were

intensely interesting. Then, after the sun had gone down in splendour, and the long twilight began to fade away, they watched the stars come out from their hiding places one by one, until the whole heavens seemed aglow with them, as they shone with a radiance and beauty simply indescribable.

If not too tired to wait for their arrival, how fascinating often were the auroral displays — the mysterious Northern Lights. Even if sleepy and tired when some of these field-night displays began, they soon forgot their weariness as they gazed, at times fairly fascinated by the wondrous visions that were theirs to witness. Never did they see a glorious display exactly repeated. There was always a kaleidoscopic change. Yet each was very suggestive and beautiful. Sometimes the lights mounted up, and up, from below the horizon, like vast arrays of soldiers, rank following rank in quick succession, arranged in all the gorgeous hues of the rainbow. They advanced, they receded; they fought, they conquered; they retreated, and then faded away into oblivion. Then great arches of purest white spanned the heavens, from which streamers, red as blood, hung quivering in the sky. Then, after other transformations, a corona filled the zenith, and became a perfect crown of dancing, flashing splendour that long hung suspended there above them — a fit diadem, they thought, for the head of Him who was the Creator of all these indescribable glories.

Thus, in the beauties of the night visions and in other sights peculiar to the North, there were compensations for some of the privations incident to being so remote from the blessings of civilisation. These new scenes both by night and by day were

sources of great pleasure to the boys, as their natures were fortunately such as to feel the peculiar charm of them. Then, with their full programme of delightful sports, they were indeed having a most joyous holiday.

But our readers are not to understand that during all these months there was nothing but continued enjoyment, without any genuine hardships. There were at times some very serious drawbacks, and the boys had to muster up all their courage and face some annoyances that were exasperating in the extreme. And these hardships and trials were as likely to meet them when they would have rejoiced in refreshing slumber, as during the weariness of a heavy day, marching on the trail of some game.

One of the great drawbacks to quiet slumber, during the sultry hours of the hot summer nights, was these intolerable pests, the mosquitoes. At times they were simply unendurable. They came in such multitudes that they were irresistible. They presented their bills so importunately that the payment had to be made promptly in blood. Some nights the boys could hardly sleep at all. Every expedient was tried to drive them off. Smoke fires were kindled, and all other known remedies were tried, but in vain. Blistered hands, swollen faces, eyes that would only half open, some mornings told of the long-continued, unsuccessful battles that during the night past had been fought, and, to judge from appearances, the lads most thoroughly defeated.

Said Sam one morning, after a night of misery with the insatiable pests:

"I see now why the rascals are called 'pious animals'—because they have been singing over us

and preying on us all the night; but, in spite of all their efforts, I am sure I am none the better, but much the worse, both in body and spirits."

"I say, Big Tom," said Alec, "what is the good of mosquitoes, anyway?"

"To teach young white gentlemen patience, and to see what stuff they are made of," said the old man, while all were amused at his apt reply.

"We hardly notice them," continued Big Tom, in his slow, deliberate manner, "and so it will be with you all after a time. Mosquitoes are peculiar, and have their likes and dislikes, and one of their likes is to be fond of fresh blood, and so they go for the latest arrivals. And one of their dislikes is for tough old Injun. When you have been here some time, and have been bitten by a great many, you will not mind them so much."

"How many?" said Frank.

"About a million," replied Big Tom, "though I don't know how many that is."

This answer was too much for Sam, so he sprang up in a hurry, and, in a semi-tragic manner, exclaimed:

"When does the next train start for home? I want to see my mother."

This inquiry from the irrepressible Sam provoked roars of laughter, and caused them to forget the mosquitoes and their bills.

When the boys arose one morning they were surprised to find a whole brigade of boats drawn up on the shore, and the men at various camp fires busily preparing their breakfasts. They had slept so well that they had not heard the slightest sound. Mr Ross and the men had been up quite a long time, and had gone over to chat with the two

officers of the Hudson Bay Company who had charge of the brigade, which was for Cumberland House and Swan River district, and was now on its way up from York Factory with its cargo of goods for the next winter's trade.

As breakfast was now ready, Mr Ross invited the two officers of the Company, Mr Hamilton and Mr Bolanger, to eat with them. This invitation was gladly accepted. Frank, Alec and Sam became very much interested in the visitors, and in the recital of their adventures and reminiscences of trading with the Indians in various parts of the great country.

The officers, on their part, were anxious to hear all about the gunpowder explosion that had occurred in Robinson's Portage, as all sorts of rumours had gone abroad throughout the country about it, and especially a story that many persons were killed, among them some young English gentlemen, who, for a bit of a lark, had laid the train of gunpowder, which caused the general flare up. The boys were amazed at first, then vastly amused, as they saw by the twinkle in Mr Ross's eye that he was well acquainted with the fondness for banter which was a strong characteristic of some of those H. B. gentlemen.

At first the boys hardly knew how to reply to this absurd reflection. Sam was the first to grasp the situation, and, in the richest brogue of his own Green Isle, which we will not try to produce in all its perfection, he said:

"Oh, then, it's right ye are, av course. An' wasn't it too bad intirely for Frank, the spalpeen, to do the like, an' he an Englishman too. Shure, thin, an' didn't he fire the powdher through down



right invy. Do you believe me now, didn't he and Alec, the Scotchman sitting there forninst ye, wish to blow John Company, body and breeches, all at wanst into the Nelson River, for your rascally chating the poor Injuns, that they might be after starting a Company thimselves."

This sally created roars of laughter, and even the slap he gave them about their close dealings with the Indians was much enjoyed. Soon all were on the best of terms, and it was a mutual pleasure in that lonely place to meet and interchange the news, as well as to have the flashings of wit and fun, and happy, pleasant raillery.

Of course the men of the brigade were anxious to get on, as they still had a long journey before them. They had only come from Norway House, a distance of twenty miles, the previous day. They had started, as was customary, quite late in the afternoon, but the wind was anything but favourable, and so they were obliged to remain where they had drawn up their boats. Their old guide, after scanning the heavens and watching the movements of the different strata of clouds, declared that a fierce south wind was brewing, and that if they dared to start they would soon be driven back again. This was bad news to all especially to the young officers, who were very anxious to proceed, and much disliked to be delayed on their journey, because it is always in the favour of an officer seeking promotion in the service, if it is known that he has a good record for making speedy trips with his brigades.

Here, however, were weather reports from one whose word was law, and so there was no help for it, but to remain until the wind changed. As the indication was for high winds, with perhaps heavy



rains, orders were issued for the complete safety of the boats and cargoes. In making their preparations for a severe storm, the crews of two or three of the boats seized hold of the strong rope which was attached to the stem of each boat, and, by their united strength, dragged them one after another well up on the sand, out of the reach of the waves. As there are no tides in these great American lakes the boats have not generally to be shifted. Heavy tarpaulins were carefully lashed down over the cargo, thus preventing the rain from doing any damage. These precautions turned out to be quite unnecessary, as the threatened storm either did not appear or passed round them. Still the wind blew constantly from the south for a number of days, and the brigade was obliged to remain. So long indeed was it detained that the officers had to order the removal of the cargo from one of the boats, which was sent back to Norway House for an additional supply of food.

This delay of the brigade made a glorious time for the boys, for among the men were some remarkable characters from the great prairies and the distant mountains. Some of them were full of thrilling adventures and wonderful stories; and, while waiting during the long days for the wind either to change or go down, many a capital yarn was told at the pleasant camp fires. Some of them were narrated with wondrous dramatic power. Indians are true sons of Nature, and, though not taught in the schools of oratory, have, in many instances, a kind of eloquence that is most effective, and a dramatic way of speaking that is most telling.

There were stories of war parties and of scalping scenes, as well as of thrilling horse-stealing escapades.

In addition there were the narrations of various kinds of hunting adventure, from those bronzed old hunters, who had frequently met in deadly conflict all kinds of fierce animals, from the mountain lion to the grizzly bear.

## CHAPTER XVII

The Story of Pukumakun—Unloosing His Tongue—His  
Early Days—Excursion for Buffalo—Treacherous  
Quicksands—Sinking Mother—Sagacious Horse—  
Sneaking Wolves—Rattlesnake and Prairie-Dog.

ONE old Indian with a splendid physique much excited their curiosity. They were specially anxious to know the story of that fearful scar across his face. He was evidently getting on in years, and was treated with much respect by his comrades. However, he was so quiet, and at times so reticent, that hardly a word could be got out of him. That there was some thrilling adventure associated with that scar the boys were very confident. The question among them was how to get him to tell it. They made friends with some of his Indian associates, and tried to get from them his history, but all the information they would impart was:

"Yes, he has a great story. It very much please you. You get him tell it."

This of course only increased their anxiety to hear his narrative. For a time all their efforts met with poor success. At length Alec, the shrewd Scottish lad, said:

"I have an idea that I can break through his reserve and get him to talk."

"Let us hear what your scheme is," said Frank.

"It is this," replied Alec; "I have been watching him, and I have noticed that the only two things he seems to have any love for are his red-beaded leggings and his brilliant red neckerchief. So I have been thinking that if I offer him that red tartan shirt of mine it will so please him that he will break through his reserve and we will get his story."

"A capital plan," shouted Sam, "and if you succeed in getting the adventure out of him we will gladly pay for the shirt."

The question now was how to find out if this plan would be successful. Some of the Indians are very sensitive, and require careful handling. However, Mustagan, their famous guide, who had become very friendly with this Indian, undertook, at the boys' desire, to present their request, and, as it were incidentally, to hint at the present of the brilliant shirt.

The scheme worked admirably, and here is his narrative.

His name was Puk-un-a-kun, which means a club, or a hammer. He was a Kinistenaux Indian, and, when he was a boy, his family and people lived a part of each year on the banks of the Assiniboine River. Here he grew up as other young Indian lads, and was early taught the use of the bow and arrow, and how to throw the lasso skilfully. He had his share of excitements and dangers, living in those days when warlike tribes were not far away. The war-whoop was no unusual sound, and so they were in a state of constant expectation of attack.

Living on the prairies, he was, as soon as he was big enough, taught how to ride the fiery native horses until he could manage the wildest of them. In such a wild life, he naturally had many adventures. The one that is most vividly impressed on his mind, and the constant reminder of which he carries in the great scar on his face, is the one that the boys drew forth.

It was many years ago, when, as a boy of about twelve years of age, he was living with his father and mother in an Indian village not far from the Assiniboine. As game was not very plentiful that season in their part of the country, it was decided that they should break camp and go on a great buffalo hunt, which would last for several weeks. While the men went to kill the buffalo, the women had to accompany them to dry and pack the meat, and to make pemmican. The buffalo herds were far away, and it was many days' journey before they were found.

One day, while they were travelling along over the prairies, Pukumakun had the misfortune to be bitten on the leg by a poisonous snake. His mother having first killed the snake, then sucked the wound until she had drawn out nearly all the poison. By this brave act she undoubtedly saved his life. However, there was still enough of the poison left in his system to make him very sick and cause his leg to swell greatly. The result was he could not travel as fast as the buffalo-hunters, who were anxious to reach the herds, and it was decided that he should be left with his mother to follow as rapidly as they could. So painful became his leg from the exercise of the riding, that at length he was unable to mount his horse. But his brave mother stuck to him and

continued to help him along for some days. To make matters worse, one of their two horses disappeared one night. Still on they pushed as well as they could with the remaining one, and at length reached a river with many sand bars. Here the noble woman, in trying to carry him across, got into the quicksands and began to sink. In vain she tried to pull her feet out of the treacherous sands. When she lifted up one foot the other only sank deeper and deeper. Failing to succeed in this way, she lifted him off her shoulders, and placing him gently beside her, she tried again to struggle from the sands. But it was all in vain. She was held with too tight a grip. Seeing this, and fearing that Pukumakun might also begin to sink, she again put him upon her shoulders and then both of them shouted and called loudly for help. But no help came. No human beings were within many miles of them. Some prairie wolves heard their voices and came to the bank to see what it meant. They found the bundle of meat there and quickly devoured it, but they did not dare to attack the horse that was eating the grass not two hundred yards away. When they had fought over and devoured the food they came to the bank again, and their howls and yelps seemed to mock the cries for help of the perishing ones, as deeper and deeper they sank in the treacherous quicksands. But that woman never wept, for she was the daughter of a chief. We must let Pukumakun tell the rest of the story, which fairly thrilled and fascinated the boys.

"By - and - by my feet began to touch the water, which ran a few inches deep over the bad sands,

which had so caught hold of my mother, that she was now nearly sunk up to her waist. Still she cried not, but spake brave words to me. Hoping some Indians might be near we called and called, but only the wolves answered with their mocking howls. Deeper and deeper we sank until the waters were up to my mother's neck, and my feet were beginning to feel the grip of the treacherous sands.

"All at once I saw the horse coming down to the water to drink. He had, tied around his neck, the long Indian lariat made of braided deerskin, and therefore very strong. As I saw the horse, hope sprang up in my breast, and I began to feel that we were going to be saved. The water was now close up to my mother's lips, but we both called to the horse, which had been in our camp for years. He raised his head and seemed startled at first, and then he plunged into the river. It did not take him long to get through the deep water, but as his feet began to touch the quicksands, he seemed at once to know it was not right, so he kept lifting up his feet, one after the other very rapidly. Still on he came until he was so close that I was able to seize hold of the lariat.

"Then spake my mother, 'My son, you will escape. Tie the lariat quickly around your waist and the horse will be able to drag you out. Here I must die. The spirits of my ancestors call me away to the happy hunting-grounds and I must obey. Remember your mother tried hard to save you, and only failed with her life. Tell my people how I perished, and give my message to the avengers of blood, and tell them not to be angry

er, that  
t. Still  
to me.  
led and  
h their  
nk until  
and my  
cherous

own to  
is neck,  
eerskin,  
e horse,  
to feel  
ter was  
re both  
r camp  
startled  
It did  
o water,  
ksands,  
right,  
e other  
ne was  
of the

ou will  
r waist  
Here  
call me  
I must  
o save  
people  
to the  
angry



SINKING IN THE QUICKSANDS.





towards you. Farewell, remember you are the grandson of a chief.'

"At first I wanted to die with my mother. It seemed so dreadful to leave her alone, but she would not hear of it. As the waters were coming into her mouth, she cried, 'Obey me, my son, obey me; and do it quickly, for the horse is impatient and knows the place is dangerous.'

"So I called sharply to the horse, and he sprang forward and with a great wrench jerked me off from my mother's shoulders, and out through the quicksands and dashed through the water with me to the shore.

"As soon as I could loose myself from the lariat, I turned round to look, and there I saw my mother's head just sinking out of sight. I was wild with terror and sorrow, and bitterly chided myself for not having died with her. But I had the consolation that she herself had insisted on my escaping when the strange chance offered itself.

"What was I to do now? My father and other friends were far away. My mother had perished, and here I was, an almost helpless cripple, on the great prairies, and night was rapidly approaching. Fortunately my horse stuck to me, and I saw that I must keep him close by me all night or the wolves that were prowling around would, in the darkness, make short work of me. So, miserable and wet though I was, I tied the loose end of the lariat around my waist, and selecting a spot where the grass was good I sat down in the middle of it, there to pass the night.

"It was indeed of all nights the saddest

and most miserable. I could not sleep. I was full of sorrow. If I tried to shut my eyes there was before me the sight of my mother sinking, sinking down, down in that treacherous quicksand.

"The wolves were very troublesome. They would sit out in the gloom and howl in their melancholy way. Then they would rouse themselves and try to get hold of me. But my horse, well accustomed to fighting these animals, would rush at them as far as his lariat would allow, and would either strike at them with his forefeet, or, swinging around quickly, would so vigorously lash out with his hind legs that the cowardly brutes would quickly skulk back into the gloom.

"The long night ended at length, and the welcome morning came. I found that my poor leg, which had caused all the trouble, was much better. Perhaps this was from having been so long in the water. I was able to ride, and so I hurried away from the sight of the river that had so cruelly swallowed up my mother. My faithful horse, that had already been my deliverer, was very patient while, in my crippled state, I managed to get up on his back. I had not eaten since yesterday, but I thought nothing of that; I only wanted to get my sinking mother out of my eyes and away from that dreadful river which we had to cross.

"Horses are very wise about these quicksands, and so I just held on to the lariat, which I had made into a kind of a halter, and let him choose his own course. Quickly and safely did he convey me across, and soon did we find the

trail along which my father and the other hunters had travelled. We hurried on rapidly until my horse was tired, and then we stopped for a few hours in a ravine, where we were well sheltered from hostile Indians, if any should be lurking about. The grass was luxuriant and abundant, and my horse enjoyed it much.

"When the hottest part of the day was over we again found the trail and pushed on until sundown. Where the grass was good I tethered my horse with the lariat, and for the first time began to feel hungry. But I had nothing to eat, neither had I bow nor arrow. However, I noticed that the burrows of the prairie dogs were quite numerous where we had left the trail. So I took the strings of my moccasins, and making in the ends of each a running noose I fastened each one over the burrows that seemed freshest. Then returning to my horse I there waited for a time, and then went back to see if anything had been caught. I was much startled to find in the first noose a large rattlesnake. He was lashing the ground at a great rate, while his rattles kept up a constant buzz. With a pole from some dried willows I soon killed him, for I wanted the moccasin string with which he was trapped.

"I was more fortunate with the other noose, for in it was caught by the neck a fine, young, plump, prairie dog. Quickly killing him, I carried him and the two strings back to the protection of my horse. I had my knife, and it did not take me long to skin the prairie dog, but as I had no fire, I had to eat him raw. It

tasted good, for I was now feeling very hungry. As I had done the night before, I slept with my horse close to me, as protection from the wolves."

gry.  
with  
the

## CHAPTER XVIII

Pukumakun's Story continued : Searching for Friends—  
Pathless Prairie—Angry Relations—Avengers of Blood  
Unappeased—Race for Life—Overtaken—First Conflict  
—Arrow against Tomahawk—Opportune Arrival.

"THUS I travelled on for some days. At times it was difficult for me to keep the trail, but my horse was wise, and somehow he seemed to know that he was following up his comrades.

"I was often very hungry, as I had nothing else to depend upon with which to hunt except my two strings, and I could only use them when my horse was resting. However, I caught a few more prairie dogs, and one night I caught a prairie chicken, which was very good.

"One day, as I rode over a big swell, like a hill in the prairies, I saw not very far away a herd of buffaloes. So I knew I must be near my friends. While I was pleased at the sight, I began to feel much alarmed. They will say at once, 'Where is your mother?' Then, if they do not believe my story—What then? So I was much troubled in my mind, and while looking for my people I dreaded to meet them. I felt that my father would believe my story, but I was afraid of my mother's brothers, the

sons of the chief. They had never had any love for me, nor I much for them. Why this was I found out one day when they were upbraiding my mother in the wigwam for marrying my father instead of a chief of another village to whom they had promised her. They thought I was asleep, or they would not have spoken as they did. I remember that my mother spoke up and said that she was the daughter of a chief who had given her the right to choose her own husband, and that she was contented and happy in her choice. Just then their sharp eyes seemed to know that I was not very sound asleep and so their strong words ceased; for Indian men and women do not let children hear their quarrels.

"I now remembered their words and was afraid. Not long after I saw some of the hunters, and when I met one whom I knew I inquired for my father. He told me where I would find him, and I rode on. My father was resting with some others after a great run, in which they had killed many buffaloes. When I drew near to him, although I was the grandson of a chief, I lifted up my voice and wept. At this he was very much surprised and hurt, for as yet he knew not of our great loss. Others jeered and laughed at seeing a young Indian weeping. Then my father arose and led me away and began to upbraid me, for he knew not the cause of my sorrow, but supposed my mother had joined the other women who were very busy cutting up and preserving the meat of the buffalo. But I could only continue my weeping, and at length was able to cry out, 'My mother, my mother.'

"At this my father quickly ceased his reproofs, and becoming alarmed, cried out, 'Tell me what is the matter.'

"So I told him all. And as I saw his sorrow as he listened to my story, I knew how great had been his love for my mother, who in her love for him had preferred him to the chief whom her brothers wished her to marry. He was crushed to the ground and speechless, and as I saw him so overwhelmed with his grief, I wished again I had died with my mother.

"For a time he thus remained, while I, most miserable, could only sit by and look at him. No words or tears came from him, but the great sorrow had taken such a hold upon him that he seemed as one who would there have died.

"Suddenly, voices were heard and we both knew that some persons were coming near; he turned to me and with a great effort said:

"My son, you must flee at once. Your mother's brothers, who love us not, will not believe your story, and, as they are the nearest of kin, the avengers of blood, they will seek your life. You have no witness to your story, not even the body or a grave to show. When they find your mother has not arrived, their suspicions will be aroused. I believe your story, strange as it is. When they demand of me the cause of your mother's non-arrival, I will tell them as you have told me. But they will not believe it, and you must not meet them, or in all probability they will kill you in spite of all that I can do. So you must flee away from the avengers. You, my only son of your mother, must not fall by the hands of her brothers. Meet me here to-night, when the moon is at her brightest, and I will then have decided what you must do. Flee quickly.'

"It was indeed time for me to go, for hardly had I slipped away and hidden in the deep grass ere I heard



angry voices in reply to my father's quiet words. But I could make out nothing at the time of what was said. For hours I remained there. The day passed on and the night followed, and yet I waited until the old moon came up to its brightest point. Then returning to the appointed spot, I found my father waiting for me. His great sorrow was still on him, but his love for the son of her whom he had loved so well had shown itself in his acts. He had with him a good horse, and a warrior's bow and quiver of arrows. In addition, he had a supply of food, and some other necessary things. He embraced me more tenderly than I ever remember his having done before, and then for an instant his strong Indian nature broke, and, with one convulsive sob, he said, 'Kah-se-ke-at, my beloved,' which was his pet name for my mother. But quickly he regained his composure and, pointing to the north star, he said I was to direct my course west of that, and try to reach the friendly band of Maskepetoon, the great chief of the land of the Saskatchewan. He commanded me to ride fast as he feared trouble, for my uncles, to whom he had told my story in the presence of all the relatives, would not be pacified, but had demanded that I be delivered up. So I was armed and mounted, but ere my father would let me go, he drew me down to him and kissed me, and said :

"Be brave, my son. Never begin a quarrel, but if the story of your mother's death is true, and I believe you for you have never deceived me, then in your innocence, if you are followed and attacked, use your weapons, and if you must die, fall bravely fighting, as does the true warrior.'

"In the moonlight there I left him, and dashed away in the direction pointed out.

"My horse was a good one, and carried me along without any stumbling, although the prairie was rough and uneven. It was well for me that he was so steady and true, for I was only a boy, and so crushed by my great sorrow that I was hardly able to care for myself. With this good horse I managed to get on rapidly. However, in spite of all the progress I had made, I discovered, about the time the day dawn was coming, that I was being followed. My pursuers were my fierce uncles, who had never forgiven my mother for marrying my father, and, now that they had heard that she was dead, resolved to take vengeance on me, whom they had always hated. They knew that, as was the custom of our people, they, as the nearest relatives, were the avengers of blood. In vain had my father pleaded for me, that I was not guilty of her death. They would not be appeased, even although he had offered almost all of his possessions as gifts. When, in anger and sorrow at their unrelenting spirit, he left them, they cunningly watched him that they might find out where I was hidden away.

"But my father was too quick for them, and was able to get me off, as I have mentioned, before they found my hiding-place. However, they were soon on my trail, but they had to ride many a mile before they overtook me, as I had sped on as rapidly as I could. Although I was only a boy, I was able to see, when I detected them following after me, that they were not coming as friends. Then also my father's words had put me on my guard. They seemed so sure of being able to kill me easily that they resorted to no trick or disguise to throw me off my guard. I remembered my father, and being conscious that I was innocent of my mother's death, I

resolved to die as a warrior. Carefully stringing my bow, I fixed my quiver of arrows so that I could draw them easily as I needed them. Fortunately, my father had taught me the trick of riding on the side of my horse and shooting back from under his neck. Soon, with the yells and war-whoops of my pursuers, the arrows began to fly around me. One of their sharp arrows wounded my horse, but instead of disabling him it put such life into him that for the next few miles we were far beyond reach of their shafts. But their horses were more enduring than mine, and they gradually gained on me once more. I did not shoot an arrow until I could hear the heavy breathings of their horses which, like mine, were feeling the effects of this fearful race. Then swinging quickly to my horse's side, I caused him, by the pressure of my knee, to swerve a little to the left, and, drawing my bow with all my might I fired back from under his neck at the horse nearest to me. Fortunately for me my arrow struck him in the neck, and cut some of the great, swollen veins; he was soon out of the race. The uncle on the other horse stopped for a moment to see if he could be of any service, but when he found that the wounded horse would soon bleed to death he sprang again upon his own and came on, if possible, more furiously than ever. His brief halt had given me time to get another arrow fixed in my bow as on I hurried, but my horse was exhausted and soon again the arrows began to sing about me. One unfortunately struck my horse in a mortal place and brought him down. I could only spring to the ground as he fell, and with my bow and arrow quickly turn and face my pursuer.

"Very sudden was the end. He drew his tomahawk

inging  
hat I  
For-  
ck of  
back  
war-  
to fly  
unded  
such  
were  
norses  
tually  
arrow  
norses  
earful  
ide, I  
verve  
th all  
t the  
arrow  
great,  
The  
o see  
that  
h he  
sible,  
given  
w as  
soon  
e un-  
e and  
ound  
turn  
hawk

ste  
m  
ot  
ve  
ne  
le  
w,  
d  
d  
e  
t  
o  
d  
g  
o  
h  
n



THE AVENGER OF BLOOD.

and threw it with all the fury of his passionate nature. I did not try to dodge it, but facing him I drew my bow with all my strength and shot straight into his face. Our weapons must have crossed each other, for while he fell dead with the arrow in his brains, I fell senseless. The blade of the tomahawk, cutting clean through my bow, had buried itself in my face. When I returned to consciousness my father was beside me. He had sewn up the wounds with sinew, and had succeeded in stopping the flowing of the blood. How he came there seemed strange to me. He told me all about it when I was better. He had found out that the two uncles, well armed and on good horses, had discovered my trail and had started after me. He was not long in following, and as he had their trail in addition to mine he was able to push on without any delay, and so caught up to the one whose horse I had shot in the neck.

"They had no words with each other. They knew as they joined in battle that it was to be a fight unto the death. My father killed my uncle and came out of the battle unwounded. Then he hurried on as quickly as he could, and from a distance saw the fight between my uncle and me. When he dashed up he thought I was dead, but soon he discovered that life was still in me. He at once set to work to help me, but months passed away ere the great wound made by the tomahawk healed up.

"This great scar remains with me to this day, and reminds me of that fierce fight and tells of how terrible in those days were some of the doings of our people."

## CHAPTER XIX

"Fair Wind!"—Fish Spearing by Torchlight—The Shining Eyes—Death of the Deer—Abundance of Game—Additional Excursions—Tradition of Nanahboozoo and the Flood—Was Nanahboozoo Noah?

THE boys listened with excited interest to this thrilling story. The camp fire had partly burned down, and the stars had come out in their splendour, but none seemed to observe the things.

The dramatic action with which Pukumakun accompanied his narrative, his genuine sorrow at the tragic death of his mother, and his fierce excitement as he described the last long race and its end, simply fascinated our young friends and they declared it was the most wonderful story they had ever heard.

Of course the bright tartan shirt, with some other gifts, was handed over, and then all wrapped themselves in their blankets and lay down on the rocks to sleep.

During the night, the strong south wind veered around to the north-east, and the alert Indians in charge were quick to observe the change. Soon the cry of "Meyoo Nootin"—"fair wind"—was heard, and in a time so brief that it would seem almost incredible to persons who have not

witnessed it, the boats were afloat, the masts stepped, the sails hoisted, and the journey so long delayed was gladly resumed. In the earliest dawn the last of the sails were seen by our friends to be sinking below the horizon, as they sped along towards the mouth of the great Saskatchewan. For the rest of the day they were quite lonesome, after the departure of the brigade. As the wind was in a bad quarter for them, they decided to rest during the day and to go out spearing fish when night fell. The Indians were set to work preparing the inflammable torches which would be necessary for success. These were made of various things. The best were of fine resinous strips of spruce, or balsam, taken from those parts of the tree that are saturated with resinous gum. They were secured in handles, which prevented the hot, melted pitch from running down and burning the heads, as well as the hands, of those who held them. Other torches were made of strips, or rolls, of birch bark saturated in the balsam gum which is gathered by the Indians, and used so generally in keeping their canoes watertight.

The three-pronged, barbed spears were fastened in long, light handles, and every other preparation was made for a successful expedition.

On account of the long twilight, they had to wait for some hours after supper ere it was dark enough to hope for any measure of success. However, the experienced Indians knew when it was best to start, and after the inevitable cup of tea, and the additional pipe for the smokers, the three canoes were carried down and carefully placed in the water. In each was one of our



boys, and they were of course excited at the prospect of this night adventure.

It seemed so weird to embark in this ghostly way, and to leave the bright camp fire on the rocks, with the few watchers who remained, Mr Ross being one of them, and to get into their light canoes and go paddling out in the gloom.

Their destination was the western part of Playgreen Lake, where they expected to find abundance of fish, of the varieties that afford excellent sport when caught in this way.

After several miles of careful paddling in the darkness, through rocks and rapids, they reached a place that seemed familiar to the Indians. They easily found a sheltered cove, where they went ashore. Then groping around in the darkness, they soon gathered some dry wood and kindled a fire. Fortunately the wind had nearly died away, and they anticipated a successful night's sport. The inflammable torches were carefully arranged, and a couple of them for each boat were ignited. Then all again took their assigned positions in their canoes, and noiselessly paddled to the places where the fish were supposed to be.

At first, all the boys could see were dark, shadow-like objects in the water that, after remaining a moment under the glare of the lights, suddenly dashed away into the gloom.

For fear of accident, it was decided that the experienced Indians should begin the spearing, while the boys looked on, and aided with the paddles or helped to hold the torches. The Indian spearmen stood up in the canoe and, gazing intently

into the water where it was brilliantly lit up by the blazing torches, were able to see the fish at a depth of several feet. Some varieties of fish are not attracted by the light, and so are not to be caught in this way. Other kinds, however, seem quite fascinated by the bright light, and will remain perfectly still in its glare, as though under some power they cannot withstand.

The experienced spearmen, with a vigorous thrust, are generally very successful in securing large numbers of these. Still, in spite of all their skill, many escape. Apart from the excitement in this method of fishing, it is not to be compared with the ordinary way of capturing them with gill nets, as regards the quantities obtained. The spear cruelly wounds many that escape, and even the Indians only adopt this form for the sake of its exciting sport, and for the capture of some varieties of fish that are not easily obtained in any other way.

After the boys had watched the successful operations of the Indians for a time, they made their first attempt, but they could not understand how it was that, when they made a vigorous thrust at a great, big, quiet fish, the spear seemed to strike some place a couple of feet or so away from the spot aimed at. Then they found that the law of refraction had to be considered, and after a few experiments, they did better. Each was successful in securing fine fish. Some, indeed, were so large, that after the boys had plunged their spears into them, they required the help of the Indians to get them into the canoe.

When the torches burnt down, others were lighted, and thus the sport continued until the

boats began to feel the additional weight of the fish thus secured. The boys were loth to think of stopping, and no wonder, for everything was so strange and weird.

The three canoes with their picturesque occupants, lit up by the blazing torches, the waters so transparent under the light, and phosphorescent on every wave, made a picture not to be forgotten. And close around them was the deep, dense darkness of the solemn forests that stretched away and away for miles in all directions.

No wonder the hearts of the lads were thumping, and no thoughts of sleep there troubled them in the suppressed excitement of such surroundings.

"Oh, if our friends could only see us here," said Frank, "wouldn't they be pleased with the sight?"

"Ay," said Alec, "and what would not the boys of the old school give to be here for a few hours with us?"

"Hush, what is that?" said Sam, as he pointed his finger to a spot in the dense, dark forest of trees that hung down low to the water's edge, not many yards from where they were slowly floating along on the stream.

That there was something was very evident, for there were to be seen two great, shining eyes, that, owing to the dense darkness around them, seemed to be strangely large and brilliant.

"Will-o'-the-wisp," said Frank.

"Jack-o'-Lantern," said Alec.

"A banshee," said Sam.

"A big deer," said Mustagan; "keep still, and we soon shoot him." Quietly and quickly a gun was lifted up, and, with a word to the men to steady with their paddles the canoe in which Mustagan stood, he fired,

the  
think  
as so

ants,  
rans-  
very  
And  
ss of  
away

ping,  
n in  
s.

said  
?"

boys  
ours

nted  
trees  
many  
long

, for  
that,  
d to

we  
fted  
their  
ired,

he  
ne  
n-  
y  
ne  
of  
d

r  
r  
d  
s  
o  
e



SHOOTING DEER BY TORCHLIGHT.

and the report was followed by the splash of the body of a great deer, as it fell headlong in the water, not thirty yards away. The sound of the gunshot broke the death-like solitudes and aroused many a wild sleeper. And for a long time the cry of the bittern and the loon mingled with the quacking of ducks and the wakeful calls of the sentinel wild goose.

More torches were lit, the carcass of the deer was secured with a rope, and as the night was far spent, it was decided to go ashore, if they could find a safe place, and there rest until morning, for it was utterly impossible, with the heavy load of fish, to think of returning through the darkness with the additional weight of this splendid stag.

The three canoes had kept together as closely as possible. This made it more sociable in the gloom, and was much approved by the boys, as they could thus freely chat with each other, and watch each other's success or failure.

The locality was familiar to some of the Indians, and a sheltered, little, sandy beach was soon discovered, and here the now tired party drew up and landed. A fire was speedily built, and a kettle of tea and a supper prepared, and enjoyed by the hungry ones. Then they quickly rolled themselves up in their blankets, and were soon away in the land of dreams. Nothing softer had they under them than the rocks, and no roof over them but the starry heavens, yet they slept in a way that thousands of excited, weary, restless ones, tossing about in comfortable beds, might well envy but could not command.

Very early next morning the boys were aroused for the home trip; but early as it was, the Indians

had already skinned and cut up the deer, and distributed it among the boats.

Part of the fish was given to some Indian women and children who were encamped on the islands near which they passed, on the route back to the camp. They also called and left some venison, and a number of fish, with the old, white-haired centenarian Indian, whose encampment of tents and



CENTENARIAN INDIAN ENCAMPMENT.

birch canoes made a picture not destitute of charm.

Mr Ross was much pleased with the glowing accounts which the boys gave of the night's adventures, and due praise was given to Sam for having seen the great, luminous eyes of the deer even before any of the Indians had observed them.

Mr Ross, in answer to the boys' inquiries, explained how some deer, like fish, seemed to be fascinated by a bright light, and will allow hunters to approach

very near, especially if they are on the water, ere they will try to get away.

The weather proving favourable, the camp was struck, the canoes loaded, and all proceeded on the way to Montreal Point once more. They only stopped for an hour or so at Spider Islands to melt some pitch and mend a crack which had opened in the bottom of one of the canoes.

The boys, who in their own land had seen great iron ships being repaired in dry docks, were quite amused and interested at the primitive way in which these Indians made their light canoes watertight. When this was done, they were all soon under weigh again, and, not long after, the shores of the mainland began to loom up plainly before them.

They remembered the last visit, and the battle with the wolves. So they were naturally on the lookout for a herd of deer or a pack of ravening wolves; but not even a Whisky Jack was seen or heard. The entire absence of visible life made the land appear quite desolate.

Selecting a favourable spot, they landed, and while some of the Indians made a fire and prepared the supper, Mr Ross, with Frank, Alec, Sam and Mustagan, visited the scene of the great fight. They took the precaution to carry their guns with them, for who could tell where the rest of those wolves might be, or what other game might not suddenly appear in sight?

Sam and Frank took special pride in pointing out to Alec and Mr Ross where they had stood, when, under Mustagan's directions, they had brought down the two leading wolves in that memorable and exciting battle, and then where they fought in the



terrible hand-to-hand encounter, where it was hunting-axe against teeth.

But little was left to tell of the fray. A few whitened, well-picked bones were to be seen here and there, but nothing more. So they returned to the camp fire, where their supper was now prepared, and ready, indeed, were they for it.

As they had made such a long trip that day, Mr Ross, who was ever mindful of the welfare of his canoeemen, decided that there should be no hunting that evening or night. So they gathered round the camp fire, and with bright and pleasant chat the happy hours passed away, one of them being specially interesting, as Mr Ross, who had made the gathering up of Indian legends a favourite study, when not absorbed in heavier work, was asked to be the story-teller.

To this request he cheerfully responded, and not only were the boys interested listeners, but the Indians of the party gathered round, curious to hear how well a white man was able to tell one of their favourite tales.

Mr Ross began by stating that among nearly all the tribes of the red men legendary stories were very numerous. Some of them were significant and beautiful, others very senseless and without meaning. Many of them had reference to their religions, and so were of spirits and superstitious. Others referred to everyday circumstances and surroundings, and professed to give the correct solution of the existence and peculiarities of everything, great and small, just as we see them.

These legends were transmitted orally from generation to generation, as perfectly as possible, by the story-tellers of the different tribes, who were generally

old men gifted with good memories. At the yearly councils, where the people met to deliberate on the various matters pertaining to the welfare of the tribe, these old men—the story-tellers—were expected to rehearse the legends and traditions over and over to each other, and to the people, who always listened to them with great delight and interest, and were quick to detect and severely criticise any inaccuracy.

The following is the tradition of Nanahboozoo and the flood:—

“Before the general deluge there lived two enormous creatures, each possessed of vast power. One was an animal with a great horn on its head; the other was a huge toad. The latter had the whole management of the waters, keeping them secure in his own body and emitting only a certain quantity when needed for the watering of the earth. Between these two creatures there arose a quarrel which terminated in a great fight. The toad in vain tried to swallow its antagonist, but the latter rushed upon it and with his horn pierced a hole in its side, out of which the waters rushed in floods and soon overflowed the face of the earth.

“Nanahboozoo was living at this time on the earth. Observing the water rising higher and higher, he fled to the loftiest mountain for refuge. Perceiving that even this retreat would soon be inundated, he selected a large cedar tree which he purposed to ascend should the waters come up to him. Before the floods reached him, he caught a number of animals and fowls and put them into his bosom. At length the waters covered the mountain. Nanahboozoo then ascended the cedar tree, and as he went up he plucked its branches and stuck them in the belt which girdled his waist.

“When he reached the top of the tree he sang, and

beat the tune with his arrow upon his bow, and as he sang the tree grew and kept pace with the water for a long time. At length he abandoned the idea of remaining any longer on the tree. So he took the branches he had plucked, and with them constructed a raft on which he placed himself with the animals and fowls. On this raft he floated about for a long time till all the mountains were covered, and all the beasts of the earth and fowls of the air, except those he had with him, had perished.

"At length Nanahboozoo thought of forming a new world, but how to accomplish it without any materials he knew not. Then the idea occurred to him that if he could only obtain a little of the earth which was under the water, he might succeed in making a new world out of the old one. He accordingly employed the different animals he had with him that were accustomed to diving. First he sent the loon down into the water in order to bring up some of the old earth, but it was not able to reach the bottom and, after remaining in the water some time, came up dead. Nanahboozoo then took it, blew upon it, and it came to life again. He next sent the otter, which, also failing to reach the bottom, came up dead, and was restored to life in the same manner as the loon. He then tried the skill of the beaver, but without success. Having failed with all these diving animals he, last of all, took the musk rat. On account of the distance it had to go to reach the bottom it was gone a long time and came up dead. On taking it up, Nanahboozoo found, to his great joy, that it had reached the earth, and had retained some of the soil in each of its paws and in its mouth. He then blew upon it, and brought it to life again, at the same time pronouncing many

blessings on it. He declared that as long as the world he was about to make should endure the musk rat should never become extinct.

"This prediction of Nanahboozoo is still spoken of by our people when referring to the rapid increase of the musk rat.

"Nanahboozoo then took the earth which he found in the musk rat's paws and mouth, and having rubbed it with his hands to fine dust, he placed it on the waters and blew upon it. Very soon it began to grow larger and larger until it was beyond the reach of his eye. Thus was spread out the new world after the great flood. In order to ascertain the size of this newly-created world, and the progress of its growth and expansion, he sent a wolf to run to the end of it, measuring its extent by the time consumed in the journey. The first journey he performed in one day. The second trip took him five days; the third consumed ten days; the fourth a month; then a year; then five years. Thus it went on until the world became so large that Nanahboozoo sent a young wolf that could just run. This animal died of old age before he could accomplish his journey. Nanahboozoo then decided that the world was large enough, and commanded it to cease from growing.

"Some time after this Nanahboozoo took a journey to view the new world he had made, and, as he travelled, he created various animals suitable for the different parts of the new world. He then experimented in making man. The first one he burnt too black, and was not satisfied. Then he tried again and was no better pleased, as this one was too white. His third attempt satisfied him, and he left him in this country, while the first two he had made he

placed far away. He then gave to the men he had created their various customs and habits and beliefs.

"Nanahboozoo, having finished his work, now sits at the North Pole, which we Indians used to consider the top of the earth. There he sits, overlooking all the transactions and affairs of the people he has placed on the earth.

"The northern tribes say that Nanahboozoo always sleeps during the winter, but, previous to his falling asleep, he fills his great pipe and smokes for several days, and it is the smoke rising from the mouth and pipe of Nanahboozoo which at that season of the year produces what is called the Indian summer."

The boys listened to this Indian tradition of the flood with a great deal of interest, and they got out their Bibles and tried to see the points of resemblance between the account given by Noah and that given by Nanahboozoo.

They decided that Nanahboozoo was the Indian name for Noah, and that the raft was the substitute for the ark. The sending out of the various animals to discover and bring some earth stood for the sending forth of the raven and the dove. In some other conversations with Indians on the different traditions about the flood, Mustagan told them that in some of the tribes he had visited they had, in addition to what has here been narrated, a story of a bird coming with a little twig and sticking it in the newly-formed world of Nanahboozoo. This little twig took root and rapidly grew into a large tree, and from it all the other trees and shrubs had come.

## CHAPTER XX

The Call of the Moose—Preparations for Capture—Midnight March—Rival Bulls—A Royal Battle—Frank's Shot—Big Tom, the Successful Moose Hunter—Young Moose Calves—Their Capture—Sam's Awkward Predicament.

IN the morning the boys were informed that during the night the call of a great moose bull was heard, and that an effort would be made the next night to kill him.

The moose is the largest animal that roams in these northern forests, and is exceedingly difficult to kill. His eyes are small and not very good, but he has the most marvellous powers of hearing and smelling given to almost any animal. Then he is so cunning and watchful, that very few Indians are able, by fair stalking him in his tracks, to get a shot at him. He does not eat grass, but browses on the leaves or branches of several kinds of trees. His horns are often of enormous proportions, and yet the speed and ease with which he can dash safely through the dense forests is simply marvellous.

There are various ways of killing him in addition to the sportsman-like way of following on the trail, and thus by skill and endurance getting within range.

In the winter, when the snow is deep, of course, he has a poor chance against the hunters, who, on their light snowshoes, can glide on the top of the deep snow, while the great, heavy moose goes floundering in the drift.

Moose have a great weakness for the large, long roots of the water lily, and are often killed while they are out from the shore wallowing in the marshy places for these succulent dainties. But the most exciting sport was afforded by the method which the Indians were now going to use to try to bring down this big fellow whose bellowings the night before had arrested the attention of those who had been awakened by him.

Mr Ross explained that these bellowings of the previous night were his calls to his mates in the forest. Perhaps they had been alarmed by some hunters, or chased by wolves, and had become widely separated. Nature has not only given to the moose of both sexes this wonderful power of hearing, but to the males this great voice, which, in the stillness of the night in those northern solitudes, can be heard for a number of miles. The reply call of the female moose is much softer, and the Indians have a plan by which they can so successfully imitate it, that they can often call the old male moose close enough to them to be shot, and cases are known where the infuriated beast, maddened by the deception played upon him, has rushed upon his deceiver, and made it lively work for him to get beyond the reach of his great antlers.

For fear of driving the moose out of the neighbourhood, it was decided that there was to be no firing of guns that day, as the Indians were certain



there had been no answer to the call of the male on the part of any of the other sex, and judging from their knowledge of the habits of the animal they decided that, if not alarmed, he would be within hearing distance about ten o'clock that evening.

The question then was—How are we to spend the day? This was speedily answered when the Indians reported that any number of sturgeon had been seen jumping in the shallows, among the rocks, not far out from the shore. The method of securing them was by spearing them from the canoes. A good deal of calculation was required in managing the canoes, so that they should not be upset in the excitement of the sport; and then a great deal of strength had to be exerted to hold on to the spears when once the great, big sturgeon, from four to six feet long, was transfixed.

There were some amusing upsets, and the boys in turn came back to the camp drenched, but happy with the varied adventures of the day. Nearly a score of fine sturgeon rewarded them for their efforts. These the Indians cut into flakes, and dried, while the valuable oil was distilled and put away in most ingeniously-constructed vessels, made out of the skin of the sturgeon themselves.

But in spite of the fun and success of the fishing, the boys were simply wild in anticipation of the events of the coming night. The very uncertainty and weirdness of the sport had a fascination for them, that made it impossible to shut their eyes and have a short sleep in the early hours of the evening, as Mr Ross suggested. The very idea of sleeping seemed out of the question. So they kept awake, and were alert and



watchful of the movements of the Indians, as they made their final preparations to take advantage of the natural instincts of these great animals.

These preparations were not very many. From the birch trees that grew near they stripped off long rolls of new bark. These they carefully made into a horn-shaped instrument, one end of which was much wider than the other. Then they put on their darkest garments, as the appearance of anything white would alarm the wary game, and frighten them away.

The evening was exceedingly favourable, as but little wind was blowing, and that was from the land towards the lake. The scent, therefore, would not be towards the moose, if they appeared.

The next question was—Who were to go, and where had they better be stationed? It was decided that as Mr Ross had caught the contagion of the hour, he and Alec should take a position at a certain rock, both well armed, while, out nearer the lake, one of the clever Indians, armed with one of the oddly-constructed, birch-bark horns, should be placed. The reason of this was the expectation that if the old moose heard the call, and was too wary to come within range of the man sounding it, he might be near enough for a good shot from Mr Ross and Alec. In the same manner Frank was stationed with Mustagan, and Sam with Big Tom, while two other Indians, acting the part of trumpeters to them, were stationed in the rear, near the water's edge.

For a couple of hours very eerie and weird seemed everything to these excited boys. No moon was in the heavens, but the stars shone down upon them with a splendour and a beauty unknown in a land

of fogs and mists. No conversation was allowed, as the hearing of the moose is most acute. For a time the silence was almost oppressive, and each boy as he grasped his gun had not to be told a second time to keep close up to his older companion.

After watching at their different stations for about half-an-hour, there wailed out on the silent air a cry so wild, so startling, so blood-curdling that it filled with terror and dismay the hearts of our three boys, who had never heard anything like it. Strung up as they were to such tension by their surroundings, in the gloom of that quiet night, it was no wonder that, when startled by such a cry, each lad clutched his gun, and instinctively pressed closer to his experienced companion. Yet such was their confidence in their elders that the boys remained silent, and were soon relieved when they were told in a whisper that it was only the cry of the lynx, and that unearthly though it was, it was really a good sign. When this harsh, doleful sound had died away in the distance, from a tree near them some great owls began their strange hootings, and the Indians again said, "Good signs."

About midnight, the first note of the call for which they were listening was heard. It was far away in the forest, directly east from them, with the wind coming from the same direction. The Indians remained perfectly still until the roaring became somewhat louder, and then the boys were somewhat startled at hearing, but in a much softer key, a sound very similar in their rear. This latter call was made by the men through the queer, birch-bark horns they had been so industriously

working at during the day. These artificial sounds were not long unanswered. Louder and louder still were the roarings that came at intervals from the deep forest. More soft and varied were the responses as the Indian in the rear of Mr Ross and Alec blew his inviting notes, while in the rear of the others sounded out their Indian's enticing strains.

"Listen!" said Mr Ross; "there is the roar of another old moose, and we are in for a battle."

Fortunately the wondrous Auroras came shooting up from below the horizon, and, flashing and dancing along the northern sky, they almost dispelled the darkness and lit up the landscape with a strange, ghostly light. This necessitated a quick change of base on the part of the hunters, and so as soon as possible they retired under the shadows of some dense balsam trees. Hardly were they well hidden from view, before a great moose showed himself in full sight in a wide opening, where the fire, years before, had burned away the once dense forest. In response to his loud calls, the three Indians, with their horns, replied, and this seemed strangely to confuse him. He moved first a little in one direction, and then in another, and then hesitated, and sent out his great roar again. Quickly, and in a lower strain, did the Indians closely imitate the female's call. Before there could be the responsive answer on his part, there dashed into the open space from the forest, not many hundreds of yards from him, another moose bull, who roared out a challenge that could not be mistaken.

The Indians with their birch horns again imitated

the calls of the female moose. This they did with the purpose of bringing the bulls within range before they engaged in battle.

It is a singular characteristic of many wild animals that when the rival males battle for the possession of the females, they like to do it in the presence of those for whom they fight. Their presence seems to be a stimulus to nerve them to greater courage. It is thus with the moose and other deer species. And now, by the light of the dancing Auroras, the three boys, and those with them, watched these two great moose, each standing at the fore-shoulders over sixteen hands high, seeking the females and coming on towards the spot where Mr Ross and Alec stood—well hidden from observation—and behind whom the Indian kept lowing softly.

In their hurried movements they had gradually approached each other, until, when not far from Mr Ross and Alec's hiding-place, they suddenly appeared in a clear, elevated spot, and supposing they were now close to their companions, they turned suddenly and gave battle. And a royal battle it was! A moose bull at the best is not handsome, but an angry, infuriated moose bull, when his temper is up, is one of the most hideous of monsters. The long, coarse hair of his head and neck seems to be all turned in the wrong direction. His small eyes have a most wicked gleam; and taking him altogether, we know of no figure more likely to visit, next night as a nightmare, a person who first sees him in this angry mood.

With a roar, they rushed at each other, and as their great antlered heads met in the shock of battle, it was a sight not to be forgotten. They each seemed as though they were resolved to conquer in the first

round, and appeared surprised when not able to succeed.

It undoubtedly would have been interesting to some people to have witnessed the battle between these two well-matched moose bulls to a finish, but the practical Indians know a thing or two about their meat, and one is that the meat of a moose that has been fighting for a couple of hours, is apt to be so soft and spongy and full of air-bubbles, that a hungry dog will hardly eat it. They also know, on the other hand, that moose meat, when in prime condition, is the finest venison in the world. The Indians were also well aware that the bulls now engaged in battle would take but little heed of any other foes. They therefore, with Frank and Sam, quickly gathered in to the spot where Mr Ross and Alec were hidden, and in quiet whispers arranged their plans for the killing of the two great moose ere the fierce battle had lasted much longer.

The Indians were anxious that the boys should have the honour of the deed, but Mr Ross hesitated to expose any one of them to the fierce rush of an infuriated, wounded moose bull, in case the bullet should not do its work. The Indians, cautious though they are, however, saw here an opportunity such as might not for a long time be the lads' again, and they pleaded for them and promised to place themselves so as to be ready with a reserve fire, if it should be necessary.

To Frank and Alec the honour of the first fire was given. If this did not immediately bring both the moose down, Mr Ross and Sam were to fire, while the Indians would be as a reserve in case of emergency. Mustagan was given a general charge

in case of any need arising. After a short survey of the fierce conflict, it was decided that they must quietly work round the combatants and fire at them from the forest side. Under the guidance of Mustagan the whole party drew back accordingly, and making a detour, were nearly in the rear of the fighting animals, when a quick, sharp word from Mustagan caused them all to drop flat upon the ground. There, clearly visible in the light of the dancing Auroras, not two hundred yards away, was a large moose cow with two young calves at her side. So intently was she watching the battle, that she had not the slightest suspicion of the presence of the hunters.

This was a new complication. What was to be done? If possible, she must be killed. The meat of a cow moose is very much superior to that of the males. Gliding past the boys like a panther went Big Tom from the front to consult with Mustagan, who was at the rear. Soon it was settled that Big Tom was to get the cow, while the bulls were to be killed as arranged.

But a few seconds for consultation were needed between these two Indian hunters, and then to the eyes of the boys it seemed as though Big Tom, the largest man in the party, literally sank into the ground, so small did he seem to make himself, as in the flicker light, with his gun he silently glided away. Mustagan, with the party close behind him, moved on again to the scene of the battle, which was still fiercely raging. The ground was very uneven, and as every advantage was taken of it, the boys were able to secure an advantageous position not more than fifty yards from the combatants.

The fierce contest was a sight sufficient to try the nerves of much older persons than our boys. The bulls seemed simply wild with rage, and as in their mad rushes their horns struck together, Frank and Alec declared that they saw fire flash from them. Others, however, said it was only auroral reflection as they turned at certain angles. Mustagan beckoned to the two boys who were to have the honour of the first fire, and placing them side by side, he quietly said :

"Wait until in their fighting they turn their sides to you, then aim to strike them behind the fore-shoulders."

They had not long to wait ere the double report rang out on the midnight air, and, as an echo to it, another one was heard not far away. That the bulls were struck was evident, for the thud of the bullets was heard distinctly by all, so close were they to their game. The effect of the shot on one of the bulls was seen to be immediate, for although his huge horns seemed almost locked in those of his antagonist, he slowly sank to the ground. The other moose, although badly wounded, gave a last vicious plunge at his opponent. Then proudly lifting up his head, and seeing for the first time his new antagonists, and being still mad with the excitement of battle, he without any hesitancy rushed to attack them.

"Fire straight at the centre of his head," were Mustagan's words. Hardly were they uttered, ere from the guns of Mr Ross and Sam the death-dealing bullets flew on their mission, and the great, fierce animal stumbled forward a few more yards and fell dead, pierced to the brain



to try  
boys.  
and  
to-  
fire  
was  
ertain  
who  
lacing

their  
behind

double  
nd, as  
ot far  
vident,  
tinctly  
The  
s was  
huge  
is an-  
other  
vicious  
ng up  
ew an-  
tement  
attack

" were  
attered,  
m the  
n, and  
a few  
brain



A ROYAL BATTLE.





by both the balls. In a few minutes they were joined by Big Tom, who quickly said:

"Moose cow shot and little calves run into woods; catch um next day, if wolves not too quick."

It was the report of his unerring gun that rang out so quickly after Frank and Alec had fired.

The reaction after the complete silence and the long tension, together with the fierce battle witnessed and the decisive victory, was very great. No need of silence now: the boys were so excited they hardly knew whether to laugh or cry.

Frank said he "wanted to howl."

Alec said he "wanted to dance."

Sam said he "wanted to swing a shillalah."

And they all said, "What would not the boys at home give to be here?"

A fire was quickly kindled, and a couple of Indians remained as watchers while the rest returned to the not very distant camp. The Indian in charge had supper ready for them, after which, as speedily as possible, they were wrapped up in their blankets and doubly wrapped in sweet, refreshing sleep. Very few were their hours of slumber. Daylight comes early in the summer time in high latitudes, and when the boys heard the Indians moving about, and preparing breakfast, they sprang up also, and, after a hasty bath in the lake, were ready for their breakfast and eager to be off, not only to see where their bullets had struck the moose bulls, but to find out why, while one dropped so quickly, the other was able to make that fierce charge towards them.

When they reached the scene of last night's adven-

tures they hardly recognised the locality, so different does a place look in daylight from what it does when illumined by the ever-changing Auroras.

However, here was the place sure enough, for some Indians had already nearly skinned the great animals, and had traced the bullets that had been fired. Frank's bullet had pierced the heart of the bull that had so quickly dropped in the fight. Alec's had gone through the lungs, and, though the wound was a mortal one, it did not so suddenly result in death; hence the bull's ability to make that fearful charge, which was so promptly stopped by Mr Ross and Sam, both of whose bullets were taken out of his brain. This was very satisfactory to the boys, and they were bracketed with equal honours all round by Mr Ross, much to their delight, for three more unselfish lads never chummed together. The success of one was the success of all, and when one seemed to fail or make a miss, the others were uneasy until he was at the head in the next adventure.

But the question now was—Where are those young moose calves? The Indian watchers could give the boys but little information. All they knew was that, after the Auroras faded away, in the dark hour just before dawn, they heard them moving about, but they did not frighten them, as Mr Ross had left orders that they were not to be disturbed unless some prowling wolves should appear as though on their trail. None, however, were heard, and so the Indians had remained very quiet.

Now a search for the young moose immediately began, but although it was prosecuted with a good deal of vigour, not a sign of the young animals

was discovered. At length Mustagan, who had watched the younger members of the party at work, said:

"You want to see those calves quick—just wait."

Quietly taking up one of the birch-bark horns, he began softly blowing into it. The sounds he made were like those of the mother cow when she calls her young from the secluded retreat, where she has cunningly hid it away from its many enemies while she is off feeding.

Now high, now low, now prolonged and now short, the peculiar notes came out from that great birch-bark horn. Some of them were not unlike the sounds made by the domestic cow when separated from her calf. For once in his life Mustagan was a complete failure. For blow as much as he would, and great were his exertions, no calf appeared in answer to his calls.

Said Big Tom, who was a famous moose hunter, and who had listened to Mustagan with a good deal of interest and some amusement:

"Let me have that horn, and I will show you how it ought to be done. You boys watch the woods and be ready to run."

Then putting the birch horn to his mouth, he fairly cooed out such a tender "moo-oo-o-o" that the boys were startled by the similarity of its sound to the familiar notes in the barn-yards at home. But soon other things excited them, for hardly had the echoes of Big Tom's mooings died away, before there came rushing out from the forest the two moose calves. On they came directly towards the spot where Big Tom had uttered his call. So sudden was their appearance, that all remained perfectly still to watch

their movements. Certain that they had heard their mother, they were now anxiously looking for her. They were a pair of fine-looking calves, about three months old, and it was resolved, if possible, to capture them alive, and tame them. It turned out not as easy a matter as had been anticipated. With as little display



YOUNG MOOSE.

as possible, the boys and Indians tried to surround them before they became alarmed. So confident did the young creatures seem that they had heard their mother, that it was some time before they became suspicious of danger, and then only when they were almost encircled by the hunters. Now the fun began. Turning towards the point in the forest from which they had emerged, they made a dash for liberty. Frank and Alec threw themselves on one, and getting their arms around its neck made a desperate effort to hold it. They were amazed at its strength, as it easily carried them along, and

not until they succeeded in tripping it up, and throwing it on the ground, were they able to detain it.

Sam and a young Indian tackled the other, and found him much more pugnacious. With a vicious kick he struck the Indian in the stomach; the lad at once decided that he had had enough of that sport and retired, leaving Sam to struggle alone. Sam at first seized him by his long ears, but was unable to bring force enough to arrest his progress in that way. Then he tried to grasp him by the neck, but a few strong blows from the calf's fore-feet made that a difficult and dangerous task, and Sam had to let go. This seemed to interest the calf, and from being the one attacked he became the aggressor. His pugnacity, and the lively way in which he butted his opponent, caused great amusement to the onlookers. Sam could not stand this, and so he threw himself desperately upon the animal, and hugging him around the neck, held him so closely that he could neither use the hard little head nor the fore-feet, with which he had been fighting so vigorously. But Sam was in an awkward predicament. Gladly would a number of Indians have rushed to his help, but Mr Ross wanted him to have the honour of capturing that young moose alone, and so held them back; but all watched the odd struggle, which was particularly amusing.

Sam still pluckily held on, but the calf evidently considered himself the aggressor, for he tried hard to shake Sam from him, his object being then to strike him with his head or feet. This Sam endeavoured to prevent, until at length he was afraid to let go his grip for fear of the now vicious young animal, and so in his desperation he called out most comically:

"Will somebody please come and help me to let go of this calf?" Help was soon there, and strong arms quickly captured the spirited young creature. It, as well as its companion, was securely tied and taken back with the party when they returned to Sagastaweekee.

So great was the quantity of meat and other things secured, that a canoe was hastily sent back home, and the next day a large boat, similar to those used by the Hudson Bay Company in the fur trade, arrived with a good crew. Everything was placed on board, including the two young moose, already so quiet as to eat the young branches gathered for them by the boys. A strong yard, enclosed with planks and logs was made for them at home, and they soon became very tame and gentle.

Harnessed to a cariole or dog-sledge they travelled with great speed and seemed to enjoy the fun, but they drew the line at the saddle, and no Texas buck-jumper could more easily rid himself of a tender-foot than these lively animals with their enormous fore-quarters could send their would-be riders into the snow or grass.

Our illustration gives us a good idea of how they looked when ready the next spring to be shipped by the Hudson Bay ship to one of the big zoological gardens in Great Britain.

## CHAPTER XXI

Excursion to Sea-River Falls—The Cranberry Picking—  
Wenonah and Roderick Lost—Mustagan's Startling  
Discovery.

THUS pleasantly passed away the bright weeks at Sagastaweekee. Every day had its duties and amusements. Mr Ross, although the best of masters, was almost a martinet in his affairs, both in the home circle and among those in his employment. This strict disciplinary method is absolutely essential for comfort and success in such a land. If there is a lax method of living and conducting business, everything is soon in confusion and wretchedness.

Yet while everything went on with almost military precision in the home life, there was nothing about it to make it otherwise than pleasant and enjoyable. So the boys ever returned to this happy home with delight, from the excitements of their various hunting and fishing excursions.

One of the great deprivations of living in a land where the summer is so short, and the winter so long and cold, is the lack of native fruit. No apples, pears, cherries, or peaches grow in that northern land. These fruits must be brought in from warmer countries in a preserved or dried condition.

In some sections wild plums are to be found, in others cranberries grow most luxuriantly. A few



wild strawberries spring up in the clearings where great fires have destroyed the forests. A sweet cranberry also abounds in some parts of the country. This fruit was prized by the Indians, and frequently mixed with dried meat in the manufacture of their finest pemmican. The Indian women in the neighbourhood of white settlements or trading posts bring in large quantities of cranberries, which they gather in the marshes and forests, and sell to those who are able and willing to purchase.

Sometimes cranberry parties were organised, and nearly all the members of the post, and families interested, would join together and go off on an excursion of several days to places where the berries were abundant, and thus secure large quantities, which were an acceptable addition to their rather meagre bill of fare.

This year, as the berries were reported by the Indian women to be abundant, Mr and Mrs Ross, at the urgent request of their own children, as well as to give the boys the unique experience, decided to, have a cranberry outing on quite an extensive scale, and one that would last for several days. It turned out to be indeed unique and memorable in various ways.

It was decided that they should go into camp below Sea-River Falls on the Nelson River, and pick berries at their leisure in the great section of country lying north-west from that point, as the Indians had reported the berries to be there in large quantities.

For the comfort and convenience of the family, a couple of large tents were sent on and pitched by Indians. The various utensils and supplies necessary for a good time were also forwarded, so that, when Mr and Mrs Ross, with Minniehaha, Wenonah and

Roderick and our three lads all arrived, they found everything arranged for their pleasure.

It was an ideal place for an outing. Before them was the great river, with the music of its rushing, roaring rapids, down which it was so exciting to run in the canoes, under the skilful guidance of the cautious, experienced Indians. Great granite rocks in picturesque beauty were everywhere to be seen. Back of the sandy beach and grassy sward, where stood the tents and camp fires, was the deep, dark, unbroken forest, that stretched away and away for hundreds of miles.

So delightful were the surroundings, so good the fishing, and so novel and interesting this running the rapids, that two or three days were spent ere any definite arrangements about the cranberry picking were thought of.

To aid in gathering a large quantity of berries, Mrs Ross had engaged a number of Indian women, who were famous for their skill. These women brought with them large Indian vessels, called rogons. A rogan is made out of birch bark, and is generally capable of holding about twenty quarts of berries. But some are very much smaller.

There are two kinds of cranberries in this land; one is called the high-bush variety, while the other is known as the moss cranberry, as it is generally found where moss is abundant, and grows on a small vine on the ground. It was this latter kind that here abounded, and that they had come to gather.

As the outing was not merely for the purpose of gathering berries, they did not pick very steadily. Mrs Ross well knew that her faithful Indian women would see that she had her full supply. So the

members of the family picked berries, went fishing, or hunting, or canoeing, more or less frequently, as their inclinations prompted them. Several days thus passed in varied sport and work. One evening, as the Indian women came in with their heavy loads, they reported finding, not very far distant, a splendid place where berries were very plentiful, and the ground dry, and mossy, and free from muskegs and rocks. So it was decided that, with the exception of some of the servants who should remain and take care of the camp, all should go and have a big day of it at berry-picking, and then they would make arrangements for returning home.

The preparations necessary were soon made. A number of large and small rogans were got ready, and, in addition, the men took the precaution to carry with them their guns and ammunition.

Minniehaha and Wenonah were very happy and proud of the honour of taking charge of their little brother Roddie, as they loved to call him. As the children were anxious to do their share of the picking, they were each supplied with a little birch-bark vessel, and with great delight did they gather quite a number of the bright red berries that were so abundant.

As they had left the camp early in the morning, they were able to do a capital forenoon's work. At mid-day they all assembled at a designated place, and much enjoyed the dinner that the servants had prepared. Then again they separated, and men, women and children were once more very busily employed in gathering the fruit, while pleasant chat and merry laugh could be heard around.

To add a little zest and excitement to the pleasant work, the whole party had been divided into two companies, and between them there was a lively contest as to which should succeed in gathering the greater quantity of berries.

Little Roderick and Wenonah were placed on one side, as being equal in their picking abilities to their older sister Minniehaha. Very proud were the little folks as they filled their dishes, and came and emptied them into the large vessels. Thus the contest raged, and as the two parties were about equal, the excitement rose high, and all exerted themselves to the utmost, that their side might be victorious.

It had been previously arranged that the contest was to cease at sundown, so as to give them plenty of time to return to the camp in the beautiful gloaming.

Able-bodied Indian men were employed to carry the large birch rogers to the selected spots where the berries were to be measured and the victors announced. Some time was spent in this work amidst general excitement, as the contest was a close one.

"Where is Roderick?" said Mrs Ross.

"Oh, he is with Wenonah," said Minniehaha.

"And where is Wenonah?" was the next question.

No one seemed to know. And so the cry of the sweet, musical name rang out on the air.

"Wenonah! Wenonah!"

But to that call, and also to that of the name of the little Roderick, there was no response.

At once there was anxiety and alarm.

"Who saw them last? And where were they?"

And many more such questions were uttered, while some ran one way and some another. Several young

men seized their guns, and fired shots in rapid succession, but Mr Ross stopped them as quickly as possible.

Mr Ross, although alarmed, was the first to get order restored, and, on the closest questioning, it came out that none were certain that they had seen the children since about three o'clock, when they were emptying their little dishes of berries into the larger receptacle. Then, eager in the contest, they had rushed off for more.

A rumbling of thunder in the west warned them that their movements must be prompt. To the point where the little ones were last seen a dozen or more had hurried, and, ere they scattered in the forest to begin the search, they were told that the firing of guns would be the signal of success or failure. One report meant they were not found; two reports close together was the signal that they had been found, and for the searchers to return. Immediately all those who were able to act as searchers, without themselves becoming lost, scattered to their work. On account of the vastness of the forest, Mr Ross positively refused to allow Frank, Alec, or Sam to go any distance away. This was a keen disappointment to the boys, but the decision was a wise one. The searchers had very little to assist them in their task. There were any number of signs, where the busy feet had walked, but the trouble was there had been so many pickers at work, and they had travelled so far, that it was impossible to single out the tracks of the two lost children.

Only for an hour or so were the searchers able to do anything that night. For the thunderstorm was on them, and, in spite of all they could do, they were

drenched through and through. Mrs Ross, although stricken with grief, kept firm control over herself, and, surrounded and comforted by Minniehaha and the three boys, huddled under the slight protection which some Indian women had hastily prepared against the fierce storm. Mr Ross had done all that was possible in directing the watchers ere they brought their Indian experience to their aid. Thus the hours passed. The storm spent its fury in the heavy downpour of rain, and then was gone. The stars came out from behind the flying clouds, and the night again became one of beauty. Still there were no signs of the children. Somewhere out in the forest alone were those little ones whom none as yet had been able to find. The heavy rain had completely obliterated every vestige of a trail, and the searchers, sad and quiet, came in one after another, grieved and vexed at their failure.

Mr Ross tried to induce his wife to return to the camp with Minniehaha, and obtain refreshment and rest; but she most positively refused.

"My children are out in the wild forest, exposed to many dangers, and I cannot go to bed until they are found," she passionately exclaimed.

So a great fire was built up out of dry logs. Blankets were sent for from the tents, and the saddest and longest night to those terrified ones slowly passed away. Mr Ross had not only sent for food and blankets for all, but he had also dispatched swift runners to go by land and water, and cease not until they had found Mustagan and Big Tom, and tell them of his loss and sorrow.

Soon after sunrise, these grand old men walked into the camp.

A hasty council was summoned, and the new

comers closely questioned the Indians who had been present the previous day, and who had searched until the storm and darkness stopped them.

When they were told that a number of guns had been fired off in quick succession, they were much annoyed, and said,—

“Great mistake ; lost children in the woods always hide when they hear guns.”

But no time must be wasted. The country must be marked out, and a code of signals arranged, by which they could communicate with each other as soon as any trail was found. Not in straight lines were they to go, but in enlarging circles until they should cross the trail of the children. When that was found, they were to report as speedily as possible, that there might be a concentration on that point, and thus no waste in fruitless search.

Not until about noon was the first sign struck ; it was a number of miles away from the camp. It is simply marvellous the distances that lost persons, even little children, will travel. The clue discovered by Big Tom was where the children had quitted the dry, rocky lands which left no trail of the little feet, and had crossed a small, shallow stream. Here the sands were clearly marked by the little footsteps, and Tom's big heart gave a great thump of joy as he saw the signs so clearly indicated before him. At first he feared to fire the signal, lest he should add to the terror of the lost children, but as soon as he examined the footprints, he saw that they had been made the evening before, and by little ones who were hurrying on as rapidly as possible.

As quickly as he could, he followed them up until they were lost again on the dry rocks on the



other side; then he fired his gun, and while waiting the coming of others, he kept diligently searching for some other signs of the wanderers.

He had not long to wait ere he was joined by Mr Ross, Mustagan and others. They were all cheered to see the footprints, but judged by the hardness of the sand in the steps that the children had passed over the creek some hours before dark the previous evening. This being the case, they might have travelled some miles further before they were stopped by the storm and darkness. But no time was spent in needless surmises and conjecturing.

A new starting point had been found, and from it the search was again renewed with all the vigour possible.

If Wenonah and Roderick had been pure white children brought up in a civilised land, with the ignorance incident to such regions, they would have been found long ere this; but their Indian blood and thorough training in that Wild North Land were now really to them a misfortune. First, because they had the strength and training to push on with such wonderful speed and endurance; secondly, because it made them wary and cunning, and so fearful of being tracked by wild beasts or hostile Indians, that they carefully but rapidly moved along in a way that children not brought up in such a land would never have dreamed of.

So, while the Indians were looking for traces of the children, the wandering lost ones were doing all they could not to leave behind them a vestige of a track. Thus hours passed on, the sun went down in beauty, the shadows of night began to fall; still not another sign of the wanderers had been found.



Discouraged and annoyed at failure, one after another of the searchers returned to the spot where the footprints had been discovered. Here the camp had been made, and here had come Mrs Ross, with the boys and others.

The sight of the tiny footprints of the hurrying feet of her little darlings nearly broke her heart. But she crushed down her great sorrow so that nothing in her should divert anyone, even her husband, from the search for those who were exposed to so many dangers, lost in the great forest of so many thousands of square miles.

The last to come in was Mustagan. His face was that of a man who has bad news, but makes intense effort to show it not in his countenance, but keep it locked up in his heart. Few and yet searching were the words uttered at the camp fire, as each one declared to Mustagan that there had been no fresh signs. He himself had made no report, and by asking questions of the others had thrown off attention from himself. But, nevertheless, he had seen something, and what he had seen had nearly driven him wild. But darkness had come on him almost suddenly from the rising up of a black cloud in the west, and, in spite of all his experience and anxiety, he had been compelled to return shortly after making his startling discovery. What he had seen so alarmed him that he dare not tell it even to Mr Ross.

Very sad indeed was that second night around the camp fire. Mr and Mrs Ross were nearly broken-hearted. Frank, Alec and Sam spent the night in sleepless sorrow. The Indians, who all dearly loved the lost little ones, sat back in the gloom, and were still and quiet. A kind of stupor seemed

to be over them all, with one exception, and, strange to say, that one was Mustagan. Sharp eyes were on him, and some wondered why he was so strangely agitated, so restless and uneasy.

A little after midnight he sprang up abruptly, and speaking to Big Tom, and a couple of other Indians, they all withdrew some distance back into the darkness of the forest. In quiet tones, so as not to be heard by the sorrowing ones at the camp fire, Mustagan told them what he had seen just as the darkness set in.

When they heard his story, they were as much excited as he was.

His story was this:—

He had pushed on in the direction he had selected in the hunt for the children, and towards evening he had reached a part of the country where the berries were very plentiful. Here he had found traces that bears were numerous, and, as they are fond of these berries, they had been feasting on them. This very much alarmed him, and he cautiously began making a circle around this place, and at length, in a depression in the forest, found the dried-up channel of a creek. Cautiously he hurried along on the dry sands, and, after going on only a few hundreds of yards, he found a number of fresh tracks, not only of bears that had recently crossed, but among them also the footsteps of the lost children!

## CHAPTER XXII

Search for the Lost Children continued.—In the Company of Bears—The Bird Call—The Rescue.

THIS was terrible news. And only Indians that have such perfect control over themselves could have heard it without making an outcry. As it was, Mustagan had to utter some warning words to maintain the silence that was desired. In a few sentences he quietly stated that the children were not then running, and judging by their footsteps and the broken branches of berry bushes from which they had been picking the fruit, they were not frightened. He judged also from the tracks that there were four bears—two large ones and two that were quite small—and what astonished him most of all was that the tracks were so numerous seemed to say to him that both the bears and the children had crossed and re-crossed the place several times. When he made this discovery he drew back a little and hid himself at once for fear his presence might anger the bears and cause them to destroy the children. He listened but could hear no sound.

After waiting quietly for a time he returned to the trail and followed it until it entered among the dense bushes and great rocks. If the

light had not so quickly faded he could have easily followed further; as it was, he was perplexed and knew not what to do. If he should come up to them in such company, he was not sure what the result would be. So he thought the best thing he could do was not to anger the bears, who evidently were not disposed to hurt the children, and he quietly withdrew and came back to the camp.

Old hunters as they were, here was a new experience to everyone of them. Big Tom was the first to speak when Mustagan had finished his remarkable story.

"My words are," said he, "that we go and tell the master and mistress at once. It will comfort them to know the little ones are alive, even if they are in such company. We shall yet get the children. As the bears did not kill them at first, and there are plenty of berries, they will not kill them soon."

To this suggestion of Big Tom's they all agreed, and immediately returned to the camp fire, where Mustagan in his simple, yet picturesque, way told the story of his discovery.

The poor mother could only say:

"Thank God. He will yet restore to me my children!"

Mr Ross's lips quivered, but crushing down his own fears, he said as he comforted his sorrow-stricken wife:

"Yes, thank God! perhaps He has made even the wild animals of the forest to be their guardian angels."

Frank, Alec, and Sam had listened to Mustagan with bated breath. As Alec said afterwards:

"My heart seemed to stop beating while I listened."

When it came out that the bears were friendly, and not disposed to injure the children, the lads could hardly restrain the hearty cheers that somehow, in spite of themselves, would try to burst out.

There was no more sleep that night. As it was at least five miles to the spot where the tracks had been discovered, the strict orders of silence were cancelled, and soon there was noise and activity. Food was prepared and eaten with an appetite unknown since Wenonah and Roderick had left the happy party.

The absorbing consideration with the parents in consultation with Mustagan and Big Tom, was, how were they to proceed when the morning came?

To follow them up and rush in upon them might anger the bears, and the children might suffer. To stalk them so quietly as to be able to get within range and shoot the bears might terrify the children, or they might be wounded by the bullets. There was much talking and many suggestions. A remark from Mustagan gave Mrs Ross a hint, and her woman's quick intuition solved the perplexing question.

Mustagan had said that as he carefully examined the tracks he found that the children had evidently filled their birch dishes with berries and fed the little bears, whose many tracks had shown that, like young dogs, they had gambolled and played around them.

Said Mrs Ross as she heard this:

"Those bears seem well disposed towards chil-

e I

dly,  
lads  
that

s it  
the  
s of  
oise  
with  
rick

ents  
was,  
ning

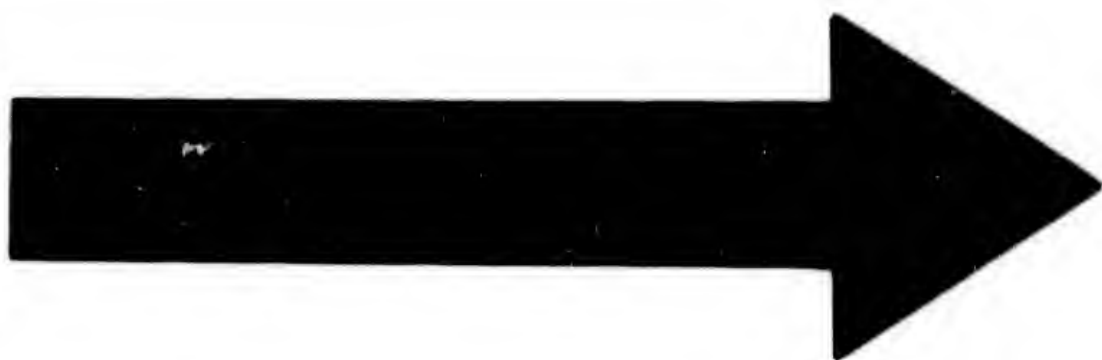
hem  
ight  
able  
ight  
ded  
any  
Mrs  
lved

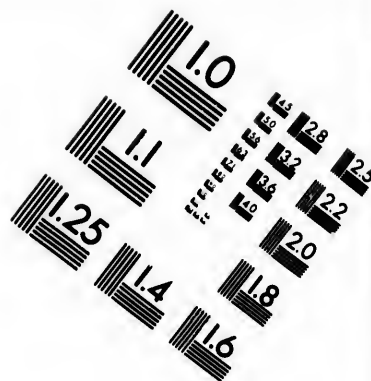
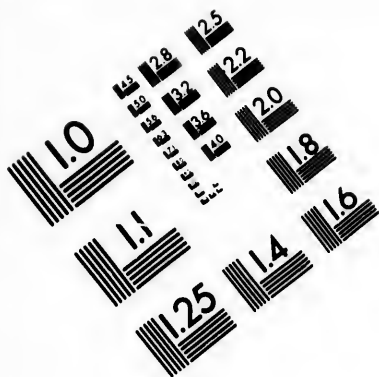
ined  
evi-  
fed  
that,  
ayed

ehil-

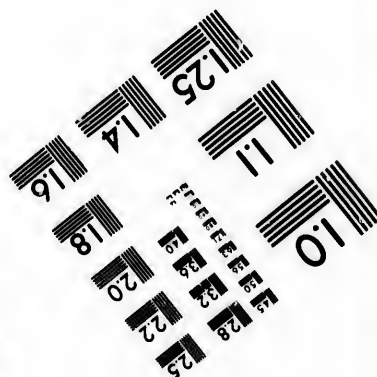
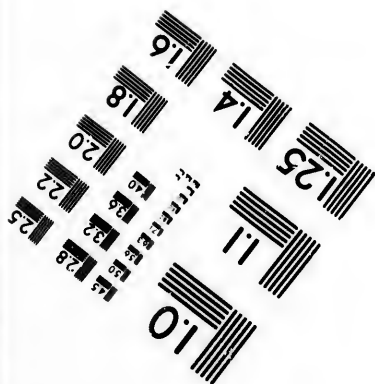
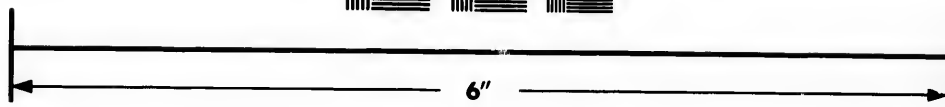
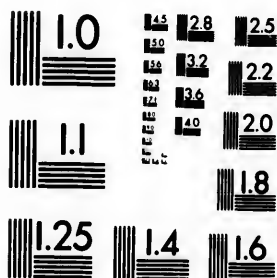


CHILDREN IN THE CUSTODY OF BEARS.





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)

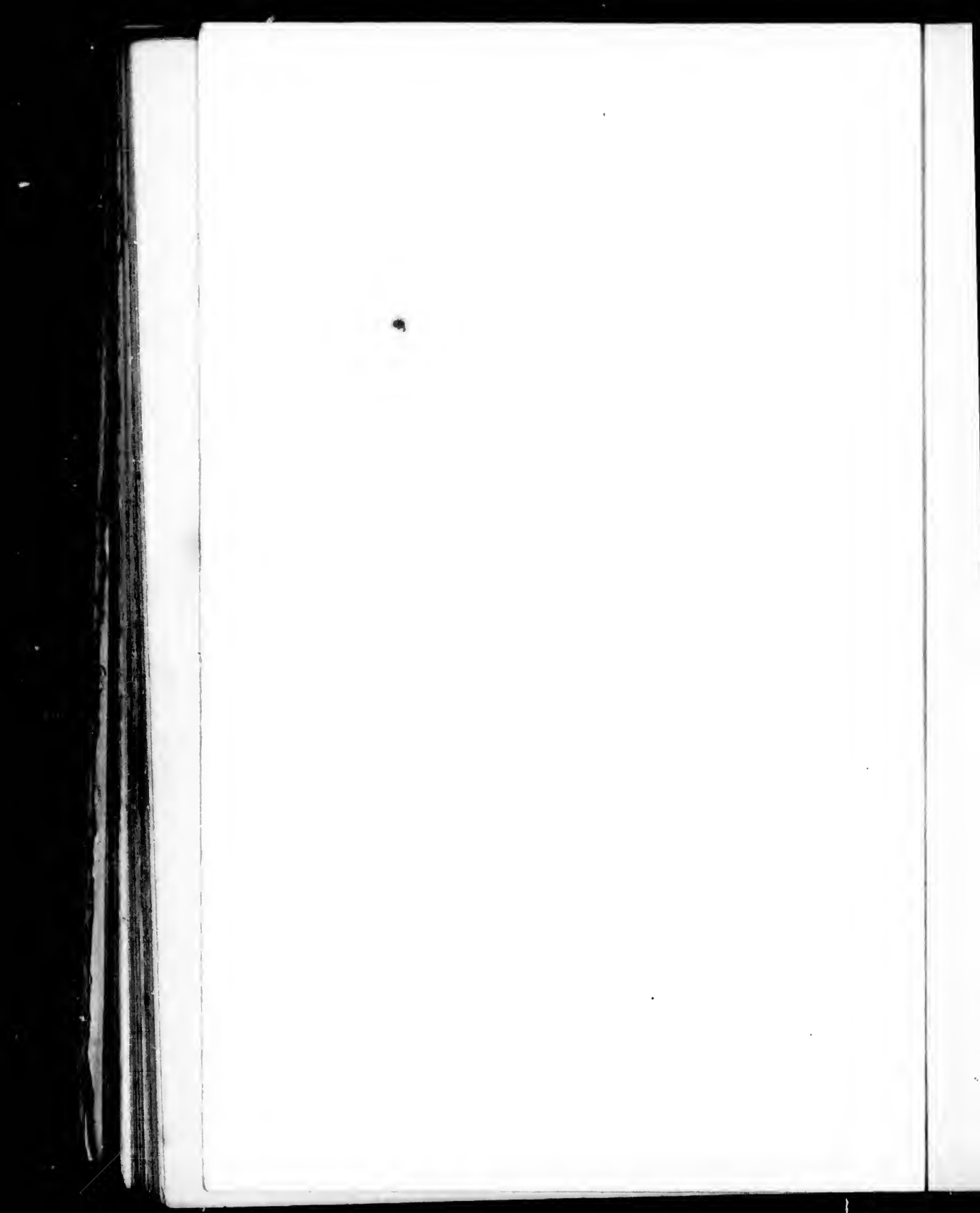


Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503







dren, so the brave boys will go on ahead with similar dishes of berries, and they will find that the animals will rather eat the fruit than do them any harm.

This suggestion so delighted the boys that, without a moment's thought of the risks they would run, they gladly consented and were eager to be off.

But Mr Ross and the Indians were old bear-hunters, and they could not at first think that any such plan would be at all feasible. However, think and plan as much as they would, they found it utterly impossible to settle on any other scheme that appeared to them either safe or suitable. The result was that daylight found them still in perplexity, altogether undecided as to the correct method to adopt in this novel expedition, so unique in all of their experiences.

Mrs Ross, however, and the boys along with her, pleaded that her plan might be attempted. As nothing else was suggested, the Indians and Mr Ross at length consented. However, they took many precautions to save the lads from harm, and prevent disaster either to them or to the children.

The preparations were soon made, even to the rogers of berries, and, heavily armed with their guns, the party set out under the guidance of Mustagan. Mrs Ross went with them, as her anxiety was so great for the rescue of her darlings.

When within a half mile or so of the spot where the tracks had been seen, they halted, and, after consultation, Mustagan and Big Tom decided to go on and see if there were any further developments. Very cautiously and yet rapidly did

they advance from covert to covert until they were so close to the sand of the dried-up stream that it was quite visible to them, although they themselves were well hid from observation.

Here for a time they waited, for they shrewdly conjectured, from Mustagan's description of the numerous tracks crossing and re-crossing, that for the present, at least, the bears were abiding in that vicinity.

Before long they had convincing proof of the correctness of these conjectures, for, coming out of the forest, on the other side of the dried-up stream, were to be seen *four bears and the two lost children*.

Crouching down low on the ground, and peering through the dense bushes behind which they were hidden, our two Indians watched them for a time, that they might decide on the best method of rescuing the little ones. The wind was blowing from the bears towards the Indians, and so there was little fear of the animals scenting danger at that distance, a good quarter of a mile.

Why the children had remained so long with the bears was perplexing to these hunters, until the mystery was solved by the fact, now evident to their eyes—that the children were really prisoners, and the bears would not let them escape. As the men watched, they saw Wenonah seize Roderick's hand in hers, and, starting on a run, try to go up the channel on the sands. This movement was stopped by one of the large bears, as speedily as possible putting himself in the children's way. Then the children, still hand in hand, turned to the opposite direction, and, when try-

ing to escape there, were stopped by the other large bear. In the meantime, the little bears played around them like lively young dogs.

Foiled in their efforts to go either up or down in the dried-up channel of the stream, after some time spent on the sands, the children and bears came up, and, entering among the berry bushes, began to eat of the abundant fruit.

They were now much nearer to the Indians, and it was evident that the young bears were looking to the children to help them in picking their breakfast of berries.

When convinced of this, the Indians' eyes brightened, and they said:

"The mistress is right. The boys will feed the young bears, and we will shoot the old ones."

Noiselessly they withdrew from their hiding-place, and rejoined the rest of the party, who had, with almost feverish impatience, awaited their return. Rapidly they reported what they had seen, and then the final preparations were made.

Quickly they all moved on, and soon were at the brow of the last hill, from the top of which the whole of the great plain, densely covered with berry bushes, could be seen, with, in the distance, the thread of shining sand already frequently referred to.

Here on the hill top Mr and Mrs Ross seated themselves behind some dense bushes, through which they could look without creating suspicion. Then the Indians, taking the boys along with them, started on their dangerous course. Like panthers they moved quietly along, keeping as close to

the ground as possible, until they reached a ledge of rocks. At this spot the Indians, with their guns loaded with ball, were placed, while the boys, with nothing but their baskets of berries, in company with Mustagan, went on a little farther. Then Mustagan, giving the boys their final instructions, and urging them to keep cool and be brave, no matter what might occur, withdrew with his gun and hid himself behind a rock a little way in the rear.

It was a critical time for the boys, but they had learned to have such confidence in these grand old red men, that fear was now a thing unknown to any of them, even at the most trying moments.

In a few moments they were startled by a shrill bird call from not far behind them. They could hardly believe their ears when they found it came from the lips of Mustagan. In a minute or two it was repeated, and then again and again, with short intervals between.

To their surprise, another bird call was heard, some hundreds of yards ahead of them, and after a time that was repeated. Then the blackbird's notes rang out from behind, and then another note came from the front. Ere the voice behind could again reply, a solemn "Hoot-a-hoot-a-hoo" came from the front.

For a time all was still, and then the song of the robin was heard in front, and only a chirp was heard in the rear.

Sharp and quick was the ending.

Soon after this chirp the boys heard the bushes rustling in front of them, not fifty yards away. Then they saw in the opening the two children,

closely followed by two young bears. As the children slowly moved along, they kept plucking the berries and giving them to the greedy young animals. The children were ragged and sadly changed. As from their still hidden position the boys watched them, they could see that Wenonah, at least, seemed to know that she must act cautiously, and they observed that frequently she spoke to the little fellow at her side.

It was her bird notes that had answered Mustagan. Little did they realise, a year or so before, when he taught her these calls of the birds, and what they meant, that her very life would so soon depend upon her knowledge of them.

Still cautiously advancing, with little Roderick at her side, and both of them feeding the young bears, she at length reached a spot where she caught a glimpse of the boys. Without at all raising her voice, she said:

"Crouch down as well as you can, and bring the berries."

This they quickly did.

"Feed these greedy young ones, while I give a basket to the old ones, so that while they are eating them, we can get away."

Poor girl, she knew not of the number of guns that were now within range of anything that would dare to harm her, and the boys were warned not to speak.

Taking one of the baskets of berries, she quickly disappeared among the dense bushes, while the boys, with the other full baskets, had made friends with the young bears. When Wenonah returned, she found the young bears were filling themselves

with the fruit. So thoroughly unnerved had the children become through fear of the bears, that, although the boys by expressive signs urged them to hurry at once in the direction of safety and deliverance, they hesitated, and, even when they started, kept looking back in fear.

The instant they reached Mustagan, he shouted to the boys to return, and not a moment too soon, for crashing through the bushes came the two old bears, fierce and savage, and showing that in some way they had become suspicious of danger.

Coolly picking up the baskets which the two young bears had upset, the boys, keeping their faces to the fierce, savage brutes, slowly retreated. The bears, at first seeing only the boys, came rushing towards them, but when they reached their young ones they stopped for a moment, and then renewed the attack.

To the ledge of rocks Mustagan had carried the rescued children. They had almost smothered "dear old Mustagan," as they loved to call him, with their kisses. Wild indeed were they with joy as father and mother rushed forward and received them as from the dead. They could only lie clinging to them while they sobbed out their delight.

At this moment a volley rang out from the guns, and two great, fierce bears rolled over, each shot in more than one vital spot.

"Capture the little fellows alive," was now the cry.

And, after a lively chase and some sharp struggling, two four-months' old cubs were so tied up as to be unable to do any injury either with teeth or claw.



The children's account of their adventures and hardships will be given in another chapter. Suffice here to say that the return to the camp on the banks at Sea-River Falls, and then to Sagastaweekee, was soon made after the half-famished little ones had been fed, for they had had nothing but berries to eat, and as Roderick put it:

"Naughty bears, they kept me all the time picking berries for them."

Great were the rejoicings both at the Mission and at the Hudson Bay Company's fort, when the news of the finding of the lost ones reached them. A special thanksgiving service was held next Sunday at the Mission Church, at which whites and Indians from near and far gathered, and entered heartily into the spirit of the service.

## CHAPTER XXIII

### Wenonah's Narrative of Her, and Roderick's, Marvellous Adventures and Deliverance.

It was wisely decided that, as the children were so exhausted, at least a couple of days should be allowed to pass before they were asked to give anything like a full account of their adventures.

Wenonah, of course, was the principal speaker, but Roderick often put in some quaint remark, which gave additional interest to the story.

Seated in her father's arms, Roderick monopolising those of his mother, while Minniehaha and the boys with some friends from the fort and Mission gathered round, Wenonah told, in her own way, the story of what had befallen :—

“Roderick and I were to try to gather as many berries as Minniehaha. So we took our rogans, and went where the berries were thickest, and once we came back and emptied our dishes, and then we hurried away where we had seen a good many. But we did not find as many there as we hoped, and so we went on and on, and it took us a long time to fill our rogans, and when we did, we started to come back, but we did not find the way, and we hurried away, on and on. Then, after a while, we called and called, and nobody answered us. Roddie

and I said we would not cry, and we hurried on and on to try and get back. Then we came to some high rocks, and we climbed up as high as we could, and when we called again we thought we heard voices answering us from some other rocks, and so we hurried over there; but there was nobody, and no voice; then we pushed on and on, and soon we heard the thunder, but we never stopped, but just tried to get back before the rain.

Soon we left the rocky land and went down a long hill, where we saw a little stream. This we crossed where the water was not deep.

We wanted to get home, so we tried not to feel tired or to cry. But although we tried ever so hard, we could not find the way. We had held on to our dishes, but now they were not half full, and so we stopped and ate some of the berries. Soon after, it began to thunder very hard, and there was lightning, and we hurried up to some big trees, and while we were standing under the branches to be out of the rain, we saw one old tree that was all hollow on one side, and as the rain was coming down through the branches, we went and got into this hollow tree. I made Roderick go in first, so that I could keep him dry, and I stood at the outside."

Here Roderick spoke up and said:

"I wanted to stand outside, because I was a boy, but Wenonah said she had better, because she was the biggest."

"Then," continued Wenonah, "as it soon got very dark and none of you came for us, we began to cry, and we could not help it, for there we were all alone in that hollow tree in the dark. After a while, a big owl in one of the trees began to call. I knew what it was, for Mustagan had

taught me. At first Roddie said it was somebody calling him."

Again Roddie, who was now nestling in his mother's arms, spoke up and said:

"I thought it was somebody saying to me 'Who! who! who!' and I said, 'We are Roddy and Wenonah Ross, and we are lost!' Then, when it called again, it only said, 'Oo! Oo! Oo!' so then we knew what it was, as we had often heard it at night here at home."

"We were glad to hear it," said Wenonah, "for all was now so dark and lonely. We could not lie down; we just had to stand up there all night. I held Roddy up as well as I could. Once we heard the cry of the wild cat, and that made us keep very still. I must have nodded a bit as I leaned against the inside of that old tree, but it was an awful long night, and we were glad when it was light enough to see. Then we left the hollow tree, and took up our dishes, and as we were very hungry, we went out among the berry bushes and ate some of the berries. We were careful to leave no tracks because of that wild cat. We ate a lot of berries, but we did miss our good breakfast at home. We filled our dishes, and then started for home, but we could not find it. While we were going on among the bushes, we came out into a small opening, and there were the two little bears. We thought at first they were two little black dogs. They came right up to us, and when they sat up so funnily on their little hind legs, we saw they were bears, and of course we were afraid."

"Then they came and smelled our baskets of berries, and as we held them out to them, they seemed very hungry, and at once began eating."

"My, but they were so greedy, they were worse than little piggies," said Roderick; "they made such funny little noises all the time they were eating."

"But," continued Wenonah, "that sound of theirs seemed to call the old bears that we had not yet seen. They came rushing through the bushes, and we were so frightened we could not even cry out or let go our baskets."

"When they rushed at us, the little bears that were between them and us seemed to think that all the old bears wanted to do was to get at the berries too, and so they kept funnily twisting their little bodies between the old bears and us, while all the time they were eating the berries. When the old bears saw this, they stopped looking so fierce and savage, and just sat down on their hind legs and looked at us feeding their young ones."

"Then we began to wonder what would happen when the little bears had eaten all the berries that were in our baskets. Little Roddy seemed to know just what to do, for as there were some berries growing close to him, while he held his basket in one hand he picked some more berries and gave them to the little bear. Then I did the same to the one that had been eating out of my dish. Soon we began moving slowly among the bushes for more berries so as to find plenty of them for the greedy little fellows; but we kept them as well as we could between the old bears and us."

"As the old bears were moving around, we could not manage this for very long, and so by-and-by they came close up to us, but they did not now seem to

be angry. One of them got close to Roddy, and there he stood up and looked so big beside my little brother that I almost screamed out, I was so frightened; but I did not do it for fear the bear might hurt him. He only moved a little, and when he came down again on all his four legs, he held his mouth close to Roddy, who just put a handful of berries in it. After that there was no more trouble with him, except to get berries enough."

"Yes," said Roderick; "I just thought that if big bears like berries as well as little bears, perhaps they would rather eat them than eat us little children, so I just chucked that handful into his mouth and he just did like them."

"I was slower in making such good friends with the other bear," continued Wenonah, "because the little one I was feeding was such a greedy little pig. He would not for a long time let me gather a handful to give to the big bear, that once or twice got so close to me as to put its cold nose against my face. My, it made me shiver. But I said in my heart, 'I will be brave, for I want to save Roddy,'" and the child's voice broke.

"I did want to see my father and my mother and Minniehaha again. But we did not cry here, did we?" said Roderick.

But the memory of that time was too much for them now, and throwing themselves in each other's arms, they burst out in a passionate fit of weeping, which was so contagious that no eyes remained dry in that group of loved ones gathered there to hear their pathetic tale.

When calm, Wenonah went on again with the story.

"After a while the little ones had enough, and then they began wrestling and playing with each other. They acted as if they wanted Roddy to play with them, and I told him to do so, but not to hurt them, and perhaps the old father and mother bears would not hurt us before we could run away."

"Yes," said Roddy, "I had great times with them; but they always wanted to wrestle with me more than any other kind of sport."

"I kept gathering berries," said Wenonah, "while Roddy played with the young bears. The old ones kept me busy now, and were just about as greedy as the young ones had been."

"After a while I said to Roddy, 'We must try and get away from here,' for we did want to come home and see you all."

"We did not talk very much to each other, for our voices seemed to make them angry. But we found that when we tried to get away, they got right in front of us and stopped us with their great bodies. This made me feel very bad, but I did not tell Roddy. Some time early in the day I heard someone calling, and I tried to answer; but one of the bears struck me such a blow with his paw, and showed his dreadful teeth in such a way that I was so frightened that I dared not call again."

Said little Roddy, "When I saw that naughty bear hit my sister with his paw, I wanted to hit him with a stick."

"The voice of whoever it was seemed to frighten the bears, and off they started," said Wenonah, "and they made us go along with them. We had to go, for if we stopped or tried to go some other way, they growled at us and pushed us with their noses, and so we had to go with them. Soon they



came out of the bushes and crossed over the sand, and went up on the other side into the dark woods. We were very much afraid; but we whispered that we would not cry, but just be brave, for we knew you would soon come and fight those great big bears.

"The way the bears made us go was this. One big bear went on before. Then the little ones followed next; then they made Roddy and me follow next. We had to do it, for just behind us was the other big bear, and he would growl at us if we did not just walk right along.

"Then after we had travelled some time, we came out of the dark forest among some—oh, such big rocks! bigger than houses. Among them we had to go until we came to a dark opening like a big door, and into this we had to go. It must have been the home of the bears.

"Roddy cried out with fear, but the bears growled again and showed their great teeth, and we had to go in."

"I didn't want to go in," said the poor boy, as he put his arms around the neck of his mother; "it was worse than a cellar, it looked so dark. But the old bear behind just kept pushing me along with his nose, so I had to."

"It was not such a bad place after all," said Wenonah, "when we once got into it. It seemed dark at first as we went in out of the sunshine; but when we were in it and looked back, there was a good deal of light. In it were big piles of leaves and dry grass, and on them the bears soon lay down. One of the big bears lay down between us and the door, so we could not get out. We sat down by the little bears, and I whispered



sand,  
woods.  
l that  
knew  
at big

One  
ones  
d me  
nd us  
at us

e came  
ch big  
had to  
g door,  
en the

rowled  
had to

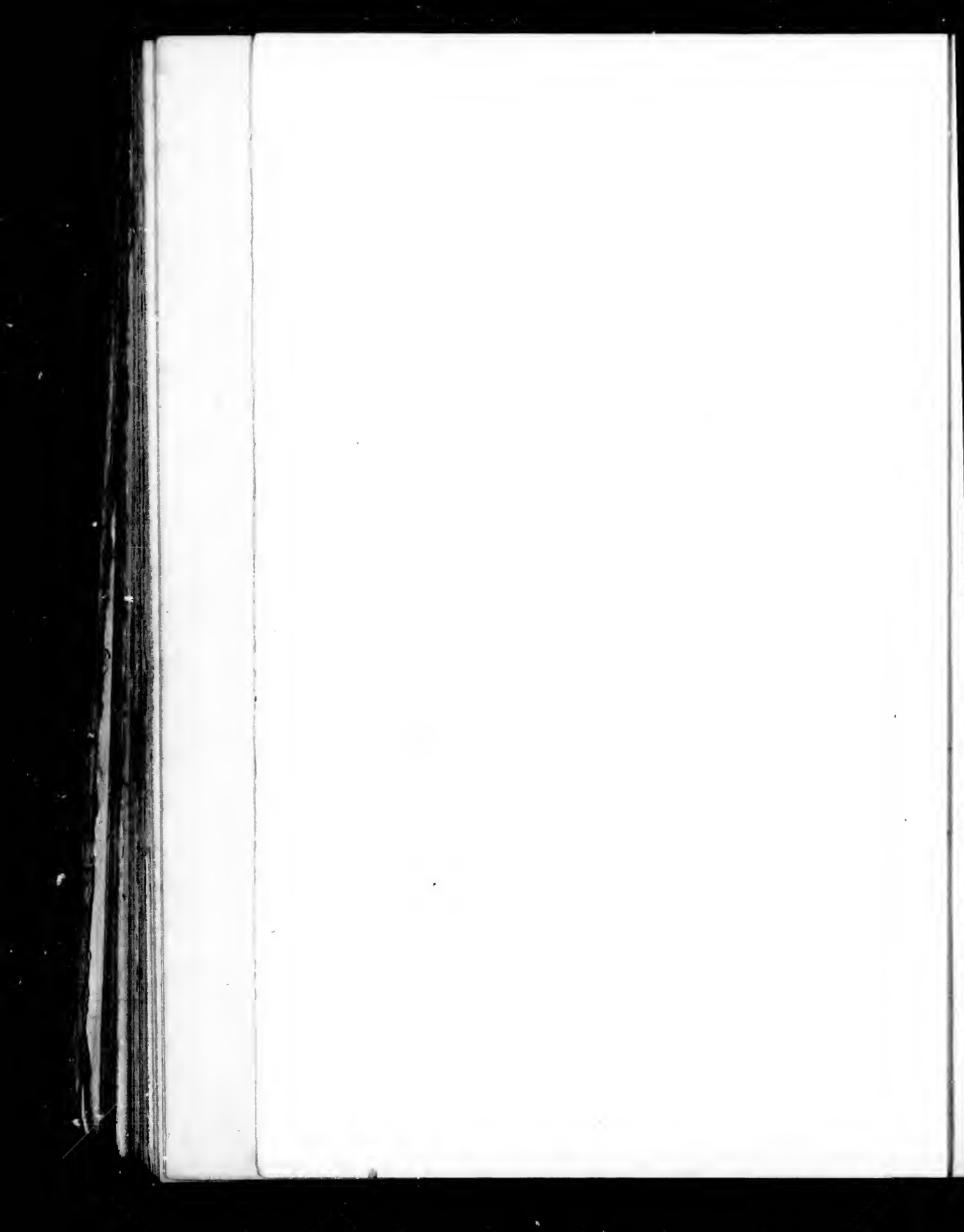
oy, as  
er; "it

But  
along

' said  
eemed  
shine;  
there  
iles of  
s soon  
n be-  
t out.  
spered



RODERICK AND WENONAH IN THE BEAR'S CAVE.



to Roddy to be brave, for God would take care of us, and our friends would surely find us. Then we lay down on the dry grass, and, being very weary, we soon went to sleep with our arms around each other.

"How long we slept we knew not, but we were suddenly roused up by the little bears playing and tumbling over and around us. So we got up, and the bears made us go back again across the sands into the berry bushes, and there we all ate berries as there was nothing else to eat. The little ones kept poking their noses into our hands, and thus begged us to pick berries for them."

"The lazy little fellows," said Roderick, now smiling as he thought of them. "Little greedy piggies, that never had enough."

"There we stayed in the bushes," said Wenonah, "until nearly night, and then they made us go back again with them in the same way to the same place. It seemed so dreadful to have to spend the night in that place with those wild bears. But we whispered, 'We will be brave,' and so we lay down between the little bears; for in some way or other we felt the little ones were our best friends, and it was because of them the old ones did not kill us.

"I thought we could never spend the night in such a place; but we did. We just whispered our prayers as we lay there, and ended with—

'Now I lay me down to sleep.'

And sleep we did, until the little bears woke us up again the next morning.

"The old bears were now so friendly that they let us pat them. And I thought that perhaps

they would let us go; and so, when we came to the sand, I whispered to Roddy, 'Let us try and get away.' But those wicked bears would not let us go, for when we tried to go along the sand in one direction, one of them got in our way and made us go back. Then we tried to go the other way, and they stopped us there. I now felt that we were like prisoners, and that we had to stay with them. They led us again into the berry bushes, and Roddy and I ate a good many, for we were very hungry, and the little bears teased us so much we had to pick a lot for them. It was when I was feeling the worst, and fearing that perhaps they would never let us leave them, that I heard the bird-note. Oh, how sweet it sounded! For I knew it was from Mustagan, and that it meant we should soon be free. But I saw that the bears had heard it, and were very uneasy, as they had been at all sounds. For a time they stopped eating berries and stood up and listened. However, when it came again and again, so bird-like, they lost their fear and again began eating the berries.

"I was afraid to answer, for the bears had always been so angry at us when we made any noise. But I knew that sweet call meant rescue and home, and must be answered; and so, while putting a big handful of berries in the mouth of the fiercest old bear, I gave the answering call. Then came the reply.

"I must have been trembling, for, in my reply, my voice shook, and the bears were angry and growled at me. However I knew I could give correctly the owl call, which Mustagan knew was our signal of danger. So, when I passed behind

a tree, I gave it as loud as I could, as though from an owl in the tree above me. When all was right again, I gave the robin song—and you all know the rest."

## CHAPTER XXIV

Congratulations—Other Incidents of Lost Children—Long Excursion by Boys—Indian Legend—"Why is the Bear Tailless?"—Oxford Lake—Black Bears as Fishermen—The Lookout from the Trees—Fish-stealing Bears—The Conflict—Bears *versus* Boys and Indians—Sam's Successful Thrust—Plenty of Bear's Meat.

THE thrilling adventures and escape of Wenonah and Roderick were, of course, the subjects that were most talked about for many a day. Children have wonderful recuperative powers, and the two little ones recovered from the effects of their strange mishaps long before Mr and Mrs Ross or even Minniehaha did. But time is a great healer, and soon all were well and in good spirits again.

The event produced a deep impression on Frank, Sam and Alec, and drew out, from the older servants at home and from some of the Indians, many very interesting stories. It is simply amazing what a difference there is in people in respect to their ability to find their way out of a forest when once the trail is lost. Some people invariably get lost in as small an area as a hundred-acre forest, and are almost sure to come out on the side opposite to the one desired. Indians, perhaps on account of their living much in the woods, are not so

liable to get bewildered and lost as white people. Still some of them are easily perplexed.

One of this class went out hunting and lost himself so completely that his friends became alarmed and went searching for him. When they fortunately found him, one chaffing him said:

"Hello, are you lost?"

To this he indignantly replied:

"No, Indian not lost, Indian here; but Indian's wigwam lost!"

It would never do for him to admit that such a thing could possibly happen as his being lost.

So beloved were Mr Ross and his family, that the congratulations on the recovery of the children came, not only from the Hudson Bay officials and other white people far and near, but Indians of other tribes, as well as the Crees, who had known Mr Ross in the years gone by when he was in the Company's service, came from great distances, and in their quiet but expressive way indicated their great pleasure at the restoration of the little ones to their parents. Mustagan was, of course, the hero of the hour, and he received the congratulations with his usual modesty, and gave great credit to Big Tom. He also had nothing but kind words for the brave white lads, who had so coolly and unflinchingly played their part in the closing scene of the rescue. His only regret was that he had not made them take their guns with them when they went to the front with the berries, so that they might have had a share in the grand fusilade that so suddenly stopped the rush of the furious bears.

The action of the bears in sparing the chil-

dren's lives brought out from the Indians several remarkable stories of similar conduct known to have occurred elsewhere. One Indian told of an old mother bear that boldly attacked an Indian woman who with her young babe had gone out into the forest to gather wood. The mother fought for her child until unconscious. When she came to herself, both the bear and the papoose were gone. She returned to her wigwam and gave the alarm, but as the men were away hunting, several days passed ere they could begin the search.

When at length they discovered the bear's den, they found the child there, still alive. In killing the bear they had to take the greatest care lest they might hurt the babe, as the bear seemed in its ferocity to think more of defending it from them than of saving its own life. The child when rescued was perfectly naked, but fat and healthy, and it cried bitterly when taken away from the warm den and the dead bear that had suckled it.

To this and other stories the boys listened with the greatest delight. The fact is, while the children were lost they were as miserable a trio as could be found, and now the reaction had come, they were just bubbling over with delight and ready for any story that had even in the remotest degree anything similar to what had so excited them.

Indians love congenial companions, and they found them in the boys; so it was not long before some of those who had come from Oxford Lake invited them to return with them, and they promised them some rare sport. At first Mr Ross was a bit fearful about letting them go so far,



but as Big Tom and Martin Papanekis offered to take charge of the two canoes, he at length yielded. So, in company with the Indians from that place, they started off in great spirits, well supplied with guns and ammunition, and all the camping outfit necessary for a ten days', or two weeks' excursion.

It was with very great delight that the boys set off with their new dusky red companions on this trip. It was principally down the lakes and rapid rivers up which the boatmen had gallantly toiled on their journey from York Factory. The running of the rapids, especially a wild, dangerous one through the Hell's Gate, very much pleased the boys.

On one of the beautiful islands in Oxford Lake they pitched their tents, and had some capital sport in fishing for the gamey trout which there abound. The only drawback to the fishing in such a land as this, where the fish are so abundant, is that the sportsmen soon get weary on account of the multitudes of them. The finest white fish in the world are to be found in Oxford Lake. They will not take the hook, however, and are caught only in gill-nets.

Black bears are quite numerous in this part of the country. They are very fond of fishing, and it was proposed to try and get a shot at one or two, as the Indians well knew their favourite resorts. Indeed, the Indian tradition is that the bear has such a short tail as the result of his preference for fish diet.

They say that originally the bear had a beautiful bushy tail—so long that with it he could easily whisk the flies from off his ears. One winter a greedy

bear, not content to stay in his den and sleep, as bears ought to do, wandered out on a great frozen lake. There he met a fox hurrying along with a fine fish in his mouth. The bear, being the larger and stronger animal, rushed at him to capture the fish. The fox, seeing him coming, quietly dropped it upon the ice, and putting his fore-paw upon it, said to the bear,—

"Why bother yourself with such an insignificant fish as this, when, if you hurry, you can get any number of fine large ones."

"Where are they to be found?" said the bear.

"Why," said the fox, "did you not hear the thunder of the cracking ice on the lake?"

"Yes, I heard it, and trembled," said the bear.

"Well, you need not fear," said the fox, "for it was only the Frost King splitting the ice, and there is a great crack, and the fish are there in great numbers. All you have to do is to go and sit across the crack, and drop your long, splendid tail in the water, and you will be delighted to see with what pleasure the fish will seize hold of it. Then all you will have to do is to just whisk them out on to the ice, and there you will have them."

The silly bear swallowed this story, and away he rushed to a crack in the ice. These cracks are very frequently found in those northern lakes in bitter cold weather. They are caused by the ice contracting and then bursting.

Down squatted the bear on his haunches, and dropping his beautiful tail into the water, he patiently waited for the bite.

But the water in those cracks soon freezes

again, especially when it is fifty or sixty below zero, and it was not long before this crack became once more solid. And when the bear got tired waiting for a bite, or even a nibble, and tried to leave the place, he found it was impossible without leaving his tail behind him. This he had to do, or freeze or starve to death, and so he broke loose, and ever after has been tailless.

This is one of the many legends that abound among the Indians. They have traditions to account for almost everything in Nature. Some of them are interesting and ingenious; others are ridiculous and senseless. It is well known, however, that, no matter how the bear lost his beautiful tail, if he ever had one, he is still very fond of fish, and often displays a good deal of ingenuity in capturing even large ones.

It was decided that the boys should have a chance to see him at his work, and, if possible, get a shot or two. This was a favourable time, of the year, as certain kinds of fish were spawning in the shallows of the streams, and for them he would be on the lookout. These regions were the hunting grounds of the Oxford Indians, whom they had accompanied from Mr Ross's. They knew every place likely to be frequented by bears, and so three canoes were fitted out, with one of our boys in each, and away they started, full of pleasurable anticipation—not so much just now to shoot or kill, as to find the place where they could see bruin at what was his favourite occupation at this season, namely, that of catching fish.

Oxford Lake, when no storms are howling over it, is one of the most beautiful lakes in the

world. As the weather was now simply perfect, the boys enjoyed very much the canoe excursions, and in addition a fair amount of shooting. Ducks, partridges and other birds were shot on the wing, or at the points where they stopped to rest and eat.

They were rewarded in their search by finding several places where the bears had undoubtedly been at work at their favourite pastime. The shrewd Indians were also able to tell whether success or ill-luck attended the bears in their fishing efforts.

At places where only a few bones or fins were to be seen scattered about, the Indians said:

"Poor fishing here, only catch a few, eat them all up."

However, they found other places where only part of the fish had been eaten, and here the Indians said:

"This looks better. When fish plenty, bear eat only the best part."

At length, however, they reached a place that made even the eyes of the generally imperturbable Indians flash with excitement. It was on the north-eastern part of the lake, where the river that flows from Rat Lake enters into Oxford Lake. Here, not far from the mouth of the stream, were some gravelly shallows, which were evidently favourite resorts for fish during the spawning season. Just a little way out from the shore were several broad, flat granite rocks that rose but a little above the surface of the water. Between these rocks and the shore a strong current ran over a gravelly bed.

On the mainland, opposite this flat ridge of

granite rocks, was to be seen a large number of fish, each ranging in weight from four to ten pounds. What most excited and pleased the Indians was that while the numerous tracks indicated that several bears had been there fishing only the night before, yet each fish had had only one piece bitten out of it, and that was at the back, just a little behind the head. Bears are very dainty when they have abundance to choose from, and when fish are very plentiful, especially the white fish, they are content with biting out only that portion containing the toothsome, dainty fat which is, as we have stated, on the swell of the back just behind the head.

When this discovery was made, the men in the other canoes were notified, and then plans were quickly made to not only see the bears at work that night, when they would return, but to have some shots at them; for, the Indians said:

"Bears not such fools as to leave such a place while food so plenty."

The impression among those who knew their habits was, that even now the bears were sleeping not very far away in the dense forests.

So the place was carefully looked over, and the best spots for observation were selected. An important consideration was to form some idea as to the direction from which the bears would come, if they returned that night. Indian cleverness, sharpened by experience in such matters, enabled them to solve this very important question by studying the trail along which the animals had been cautiously coming and going very recently. This they found to be almost a straight

line running directly back into the depths of the thick forest.

To climb trees as points of observation from which to view bears, is, as a general thing, a dangerous experiment, as bears themselves are such capital climbers. But there are times when, on account of the flatness of the country, it is the only course available for those who would observe their actions. So, as speedily as possible, the trees were selected that were considered most suitable. These were situated a little north and south of the spot where the bears had thrown their fish on the shore. They were a little distant from the trail along which it was likely the bears would come. Three trees were chosen, and it was decided that Sam, Alec and Frank should each have an Indian in his tree with him in case of attack. The other Indians were to remain out from the shore in their canoes, sheltered from view by some rocks that were not far distant. They were not so far away as to be beyond call if they should be needed.

All these matters having been decided upon, they entered their canoes again and quietly paddled out to one of the rocky isles not far away; and on the side opposite to the mainland they gathered some dry wood and had a good dinner, for which they had capital appetites. Then the Indians lit their pipes and curled down on the rocks for a smoke and rest, and urged the boys also to try get some sleep. At first they thought they were too excited to sleep, in view of the coming night's adventures; but, as the Indians so desired it, they lay down near the shore, and the rippling

waves made such a soothing lullaby that, strange to say, they were soon in dreamless slumber.

A couple of hours was all that could be allowed them, for, as the Indians said:

"Sometimes bears move around early, and we must be all there in the trees before they come."

Their preparations were soon made. The guns were freshly loaded with ball, and some extra ammunition was taken in each one's pockets. Their hunting knives were given a few rubs on the stones to see that they were keen and sharp. In addition, much to the boys' surprise, there was given to each one of them a good solid birch club, about eighteen inches in length and an inch and a half thick. As an extra precaution against these being dropped, the Indian, who had prepared them while the boys slept, had bored a hole through one end, and inserted a deer-skin thong to slip over the wrist. How they were to be used, and the wisdom of preparing them, we shall see later on. The Indians were similarly armed, but in addition they stuck their hunting hatchets in their belts.

A few final instructions were given, signals arranged, and the boys and their Indian comrades were noiselessly paddled to the shore. They were landed as closely as possible to the trees in which they were to be ensconced, so as to leave but little scent of their footsteps on the ground.

In the two trees selected on the north side were Frank and Alec, each with an Indian hunter, while Sam and his attendant took up their station in a fine large tree on the south side. It was about an hour before sundown ere they were all quietly stowed away in these peculiar resting-places. The other Indians quietly paddled back to the places designated beyond the rocks.



For a couple of hours they had to sit there in silence, broken only by the singing of the birds around them, or the call or cry of some wild animal in the forest. They were first aroused by hearing the crunching of bones where they had noticed the fish lying. On peering out from their hiding-places they saw an old black fox, with a litter of half-grown cubs, making a hasty meal on the fish. The Indians would have loved to have captured them, as the skin of the black fox is very valuable. However, it was not foxes they were now after, but bears, and, besides this, the skin of the fox is only prime in the cold wintry months. So they had to be content with watching them, as there they greedily devoured the fish. Suddenly they were disturbed in their repast, and dashed away, each with a piece of fish in its mouth, and the watchers observed that what had caused their sudden retreat was a large wolverine that had quite unexpectedly appeared upon the scene. He too seemed to be fond of fish, and at once began to feast upon them.

Not long, however, was he permitted thus to enjoy himself, for out in the beautiful gloaming a great black bear was now seen emerging from the dark forest upon the shore. At his coming, the thievish wolverine at once slunk off. The bear did not attempt to eat any of the fish that still remained, but after a short survey of the coast, up and down, to see that all was clear, he boldly plunged into the water, and crossed over to one of the shallow rocks only a few yards away. Hardly had he reached it ere another, and then another bear came out from the forest along the central trail which the men had discovered earlier in the day.

They were not long in joining their comrade on



the smooth, wide rocks which we have described. After they had spent a little time in inspection, they lay down on the rocks facing the shore, and as close to the water as they could without really touching it. These movements could be distinctly seen by the boys as they looked out towards the west, where the sky was still bright, and the few clouds golden.

For a few minutes the bears were very still; then there was a quick movement on the part of one of them as he shot out one of his hand-like paws in the water under a passing fish, and threw it from him across the stream, high and dry on to the shore. Soon the other bears were similarly employed, and fish were being rapidly captured. The boys excitedly watched these sturdy fishers, and were astonished at the cleverness and quickness with which they acted. Although they had to throw the fish quite a number of yards, they very seldom miscalculated or allowed any to fall short and drop back into the water.

But before the pile of fish had become very large, something else happened to divert the attention of the spectators from the three four-footed fishers cut on the flat rocks. Quite suddenly they heard the sounds of tearing flesh and breaking bones. On looking down to see who were the new intruders, they were able to make out, not many yards below them, a couple of other bears that, in their prowling around and search for food, had found their way to this capital supply. As the watchers peered down at them it was evident, by the greedy way in which they devoured the fish, that they were so hungry as not to be at all particular.

Their sudden appearance and attack on the food were not at all appreciated by the industrious trio

that had been so skilfully catching these fish for their own supper. They had no disposition to be fishermen for others, and with growls of rage they dashed into and across the water and sprang upon the intruders. It was a fierce battle, and but little of it could be distinctly seen, especially when under the shadows of the trees. When, however, in their struggles, the bears came out on the bright sandy shore, there was still enough of the western twilight in which to witness a good deal of terrific fighting. Bears have thick fur and tough hides, and their battles are generally carried on until one side is shaken into exhaustion, or knocked into submission; but so stubborn was the fight here, that it continued, with but few intermissions, until the moon, which was nearly full, had so risen up that everything was made almost as bright as in the daytime.

It was evident that the two intruding bears were so hungry that, although they had been well shaken, they were loth to consider themselves beaten, or to leave so sumptuous a supper, and so they again returned to the conflict. The battle was renewed in all its fury, and when the three were once more victorious, the vanquished, instead of again retreating into the forest, rushed to the two nearest trees and began to ascend, one followed by two bears and the other by one.

These trees up which five bears were now climbing, happened to be the ones in which Frank and Alec and their two Indian companions were hidden.

Bears are capital climbers, and these two fellows, stimulated by the cuffs and bites of their antagonists behind them, made good time in the ascent. Now for the first time the boys saw for what purpose

they had been armed with those handy birch clubs. A bear's tenderest spot is his nose. This the Indians well know, and, when they are chased by a bear, they always defend themselves by striking him there. A bear that will stand heavy blows with a club on his skull, or shoulders, or even paws, gives up the fight at once when rapped over the nose.

Concealment was now no longer possible, and the word was passed by the Indians to the boys:

"Hit them on the nose whenever you can."

The two angry bears were so taken up with the attack of their own species below them, that they little imagined that there were enemies above, and the first intimation they had of the presence of the boys and Indians was a smart rap on the nose.

Whack! whack! whack! fell the blows upon their snouts, and down they dropped suddenly to the ground, each of them carrying with him the assailant that happened to be just below him. This sudden discomfiture of the bears brought out a cheer from the boys, which, of course, startled and excited the other bears, that were already in a very pugnacious mood.

The two first were additionally angry because of the ugly blows that had met them, and the other three fishers seemed to imagine that fresh assailants were there in the trees ready to come down and rob them of their supper.

The Indians declare the bears know how to talk with each other; anyway, these five seemed for the present to proclaim a truce amongst themselves that together they might attack their common foes who were ensconced up there in the trees.

Fortunate was it for our friends that the moon was now so high in the heavens that they

could see every movement of the bears as distinctly as though it had been daylight. For a time the animals moved about excitedly below them, and occasionally made a feint as though they were about to climb the trees and again attack them. Then they hesitated, and kept moving angrily about from tree to tree. Sam and his comrade in the third tree were soon discovered, and two or three of the bears made a pretence of climbing this, but desisted and dropped back to the ground.

In the meantime, the rest of the Indians out in the canoes had heard the growling and fighting among the bears, and had paddled in much nearer to the shore. By their expressive calls, the Indians in the trees had given those in the canoes some idea of how the conflict stood, and that they were able to defend themselves.

The bears at length seemed to have come to some arrangement among themselves, for they divided their forces and began attacking the three trees at once. The two that had come last attacked the tree in which Sam and his comrade were. Two of the other three began climbing the tree in which were Alec and his man, while Frank and his companion had only to face the remaining one.

"Strike them on the nose," was still the cry of the Indians; and, although the bears made desperate efforts to defend their tender nostrils while they still advanced, they eventually had to give up the attempt one after another, and drop back to the ground, fairly howling with rage and pain. But angry bears have a great deal of perseverance, and this phase of the fight was not over until each bear had tried every one of the three trees in succession ere he gave in. After moving round and round and

growling out their indignation, they tried the plan of several climbing up the same tree together. However, as the trees were not very large, this scheme did not succeed any better, and they were again repelled.

"What trick will they try next, I wonder?" said Frank.

"Get your guns handy," was the answer, "for you may soon need them."

And sure enough the bears, after talking in their whining, growling way to each other, again rushed to the attack, and while three of them began each to climb one of the trees in which were our friends, the other two began climbing a couple of other trees, whose great branches interlaced with those of the trees in which were two of the boys.

The Indians were quick to notice this ruse, and said,—

"The bears must never be allowed to get up those trees above us; for if they do it may go hard with us."

The brutes were very cunning, for they tried as much as possible to climb up the trees on the sides opposite the places where were hidden Frank and Alec and their Indians. However, they could not keep entirely hidden, and at the signal of one of the Indians there rang out the simultaneous discharge of the four guns. One of the bears instantly dropped to the ground, but the other one continued his climbing until he reached a position quite close to Frank, on a branch of the tree in which he had ascended. The boy and men had not time to load again, as their guns were single-barrelled muzzle-loaders, and in addition to watching this attack of

the two bears, they had to use their clubs vigorously on the noses of the other three.

But, as before, these three were speedily defeated, and now the excitement was to see how Frank and his comrade would deal with the big fellow that had succeeded in reaching the branch that was in a line with them. They could observe him cautiously working his way on this great arm of the tree which he had ascended, and endeavouring to get into the branches of the tree in which they were located.

After some clever balancing, he managed to get hold of a long branch that stretched out horizontally towards him, and, steadying himself on it, and holding on to a much smaller one above, he gradually began making his way towards them. The Indian at once saw his opportunity, and told Frank, who was on this upper branch to which the bear was clinging with his fore-paws, to crawl out bravely as far as he safely could, and keep up a vigorous attack with his club on the bear's nose. This Frank gallantly did, and while he was thus employed the Indian drew his axe, and began vigorously chopping the large limb of the tree on which the bear was standing. Assailed by Frank's blows he made but little headway, and, before he knew what was up, the branch suddenly gave way under him and he fell to the ground a badly-stunned and much-discouraged bear.

This gave time for the guns to be reloaded, and then the besieged, thinking they had had excitement enough for one night, became the assailants, and began firing down upon the bears below them.

Sam, in his excitement, had put too much powder

in his gun, and when he fired the kick of the weapon caused him to lose his balance, and he tumbled to the ground. It was fortunate for him that he fell in a soft place, and was not in the least hurt or stunned, for the only unwounded bear soon made a rush for him, but was not quick enough to find him unprepared.

Sam now knew more about bears than he did when he rushed into the camp with one not far behind him. Now he had no desire even to try to regain his position in the tree from the branches of which he had so suddenly descended. Springing up from the spot where he had fallen, he drew his keen-bladed knife, placed his back against the tree-trunk, and awaited the attack. He had not long to wait. The bear, maddened by the battle that had been going on, and doubly excited by the smell of blood from his wounded comrades, rushed at him with the intention of making short work of him by hugging him to death. But he little knew what was before him. With all the nerve and coolness of an old Indian hunter, Sam waited until the big fore-paws, like great, sinewy arms, were almost around him. Then, with a sudden lunge, he drove the knife firm and true into the very heart of the fierce brute. There was one great convulsive shiver, and the bear fell over dead.

The next instant there was a loud shout from those who had landed from the canoes in time to witness this brave act. The shout was caught up by the others, who, when they saw Sam's unceremonious descent from the tree, began to descend, but more slowly, and were in good time to see him give the deadly thrust.



Sam had indeed redeemed his reputation, and was the hero for many a day. Alec and Frank were very proud of him, and hearty were their congratulations. Sam cheerfully accepted all they said, but had his own opinions of himself; first, for putting too much powder into his gun, and then for ignominiously tumbling out of the tree.

On looking over the ground they found four dead bears; one that was badly wounded had managed to crawl away into the forest.



SAM'S SUCCESSFUL THRUST.

They had had enough excitement for that night, so they gathered up some dry wood, made a fire, and cooked some of the fine white fish in thorough Indian style. They had good appetites for a good supper, and after it were soon sound asleep. As usual, the boys were the last to wake up the next morning, and they found that the Indians had already tracked and killed the wounded bear that had escaped in the night.

Some time was spent in skinning them, and then,



loaded with the robes and meat, they returned in high spirits to where they had left Big Tom and Martin Papanekis, and the other Indians.

There were great rejoicings at their success, and even quiet Big Tom had some cheery, congratulatory words to say to Sam, which the latter prized very much indeed.

n, and  
Frank  
e their  
ll they  
est, for  
en for  
  
r dead  
anaged



night,  
a fire,  
orough  
a good  
o. As  
e next  
had al-  
r that  
  
d then,

## CHAPTER XXV

A Successful Mission—Peculiar Address—The Visit to the Beavers—Commodious Houses—Well-constructed Dams—The Moonlight Sight—Strange Interruption—Stealthy Wolverine—Crouching Wolves—More Cunning Men—A Mixed-up Battle—Delighted Boys—Return to Sagastaweekee.

THEY rested that day, and then the next, being Saturday, they decided to go to the upper end of the lake, and camp there, so as to be near the newly-formed mission established by a Rev. Mr. Brooking, and thus be able to attend service on the Sunday.

They met with a cordial welcome from Mr and Mrs Brooking, who, living in such a lonely place, were delighted to welcome visitors—especially white boys, who were able to give them information about friends in the old land which they had not visited for many years. The lads were very much interested in the mission and school. As they remained camped in the vicinity for a few days, they saw and heard a good deal of the genuineness of the work done; and always in after years they were strong advocates for foreign missions. And yet there were some things, which showed how wise and patient a missionary has to be in leading a people up from the darkness and ignorance of Paganism.

The missionary told them many amusing stories.

Here is a simple one: One of his converts was anxious to preach to his fellow-countrymen, and in this laudable desire he was encouraged by the missionary. As long as he stuck to his subject and talked about the Gospel he did very well indeed. But soon his ambition led him to tackle subjects about which he was not very well informed.

One day, in addressing a company of his countrymen, he exclaimed:

"My friends, the missionary says the world is round; but he is mistaken, it is flat; yes, as flat as the top of that stove," pointing to the great iron stove in the centre of the room.

When the missionary heard this, of course he had to give Metassis a lesson in geography. He showed him a map of the hemispheres, and, as he thought, so fully explained the matter that there could be no further mistake.

The next time Metassis stood up to speak, he said:

"Friends, I made a mistake. The world is round; but it is flat one way for sure." This he said because he had seen the flat maps on the wall. It was thus evident that another lesson in geography was necessary, and a school globe had to be brought into requisition before he could be convinced that it was round. His apology did not much mend matters. Here it is:

"My friends, I made another mistake. The world is round, but then it stands on three legs."

This he said because the globe that he had been shown worked in a frame that was supported by three legs.

To see beavers at work was one of the sights that

had long been desired by the boys, for at many a camp fire, they had heard the Indians talk about these most industrious of all animals, and tell such wonderful stories of their cleverness. So now as the moon was still bright, it was decided to accept the invitation of some very friendly Indians, and go and visit a large beaver dam that they had discovered was being constructed by a colony of these animals. Nothing could have given greater pleasure to the boys than this invitation, and it was gladly accepted.

In view of the fact that the moon was already waning, it was decided to set off that very afternoon in order to reach the place by sundown, so as to be in good positions to see, ere the beavers began their night's varied occupations.

The many wonderful things which have been written and told about beavers we need not here repeat; suffice it to say that those Indians who most hunt them, and thus have the best opportunity of studying their ways and doings, are the ones who speak most strongly and enthusiastically about them.

Of the size of the trees they can cut down with their teeth, and of the length and strength of the dams they can construct, as well as of the reason and instinct they seem to exercise in giving the right curve to these dams at the dangerous places, so that they will be best able to resist the force of the current, even when swollen by heavy floods, we need not here speak in detail. It is enough to say that tree-stumps over two feet in diameter are still to be found with the marks of the teeth of the beaver that had cleverly and accurately felled the great trees that stood there, defying every storm,

proud monarchs of the forests until these industrious animals laid them low.

Dams hundreds of yards long, and wide enough and strong enough for great waggons to travel over easily, and pass each other on, can still be traced out in regions whence the beaver has long been exterminated.

Beaver meadows are still prized by the farmers for the hundreds of acres of richest hay land, formed by the rich earth brought down in times of freshets from the high regions beyond, and year after year deposited in these beaver ponds until at length they were so filled up, that what was once like a great inland lake, has become a prairie or meadow of rich waving grass.

Beavers' houses were in some instances not only larger, but in every case much more cleverly and thoroughly built than were the habitations of the pagan Indians.

Their forethought in cutting, depositing upon the bottom of the waters, and ingeniously fastening there, vast quantities of the birch or willow, the bark of which was to serve as food during the long winter months, was far ahead of the habits of the improvident people, who literally took "no thought for the morrow," and so were often at starvation point while the industrious beavers, in their warm, cosy homes, had enough and to spare.

When it was decided to go, the preparations were quickly made, and, bidding "farewell" to the missionary and his heroic wife, from whom they parted with regret, the canoes were pointed to the east again. After some hours of hard paddling they reached a fairly large river, up which they were to go as far as a large creek which entered into it, and

upon which the beaver dam, now being constructed, was to be found.

At the mouth of the river they went ashore for a rest and supper. Here the whole programme of the night was talked over, and all arrangements made. It was necessary that everything should be thoroughly understood beforehand, as beavers are very watchful and timid animals, and the least alarm sends them to their retreat, and it is a long time ere they resume their work. As a precaution against surprise from bears or wolves, or even wolverines, who are very fond of beaver flesh, the party decided to take their guns along with them.

The creek, which was more like a small river, ran through a beautiful valley, and on either side were hills, some of which rose up so precipitately from the water that they formed admirable positions from which the cautious sightseers could watch the operations of the busy toilers when they were at work in the waters below.

The wind was everything that could be desired, and our three boys were able to be together, but they had to wait quite a time in the most complete silence for the appearance of the industrious, but timid, beavers.

It is amazing how all animals seem to be acquainted with the natural sounds that come from the woods or prairies, and are but little disturbed by them, while a sound that is unnatural is at once detected. For example, Big Tom was more than once heard to say, in his quiet way, that when hunting moose, he noticed that a storm might be raging, and the great branches of the trees snapping and breaking in the gale, yet the moose seemed to pay no attention to any of these sounds. But just

let the hunter be careless enough to snap a dry stick under his moccasined foot, and the moose was alarmed and off like a shot. So it is with the beaver. The ordinary sounds of night disturb them not, but the report of a gun, it may be a mile away, sends them instantly to their retreats, while the slightest evidence of hunters so disturbs them that perhaps for twenty-four hours they will keep under cover, without making the slightest visible movement.

The moon was quite high up in the heavens ere the first rippling sounds were heard upon the waters. The first arrivals seemed to be the watchers, who had come to report. They appeared to swim almost from end to end of the great pond that had already been made by the strong dam, which was now almost finished.

As soon as they had, in some way, intimated that the coast was clear, others appeared upon the scene, until between twenty and thirty were at the same time visible. Some were industriously employed in carrying additional stones and mud to the dam, and carefully filling up every crack and crevice. Others were guiding great logs down the current, and fastening them in position where they would strengthen the dam against possible floods and freshets. The majority, and they were principally the smaller ones, were employed in cutting down small birch and willows, which they dragged by their teeth to the edge of the pond, and then suddenly dived with to the bottom. The pieces that they could not stick firmly in the mud, they fastened down at the bottom by piling stones upon them to keep them from floating.

The boys were too far away to see by the moon's

light the beavers actually at work among a clump of large trees that stood on the shore some way up the stream, but the crashing down of a couple of trees into the water told very clearly that some were there industriously at work. Thus for a couple of hours the whole party watched with great interest these clever animals, and then came an abrupt conclusion. It was not caused by any of our party, as the Indians, having abundance of food, had no desire now to kill the beaver. Besides, the skins, so valuable in winter, were now of but little worth.

As we have stated, beavers have many enemies. Their flesh is very much prized as food by all the carnivorous animals of that country. And so, while our party was watching with such pleasure the varied movements described above, there were other eyes upon the busy workers, full of evil purposes, and strange to say, not very far away from where our boys and Indians were hidden.

As before mentioned, our hunters were on the top of a hill that rose abruptly up from the pond caused by the backing up of the waters by the beaver dam. From this point of observation they looked out towards the west; on the left side were other hills, much smaller and less steep. Just about the time they were thinking of retiring, the sharp eyes of one of the Indians noticed a dark object on the small hill nearest to them. Whispering a word of caution, they all lay as low as possible, and watched. On and on, and at length out from the shadow of some bushes, into the clear moonlight, came an animal, and the keen-visioned Indians saw that it was a wolverine. Our party was so high above it that they had not been detected.



It was evident from its actions that it was on a beaver hunt. At every extra noise the busy animals made in the water, as logs were rolled in or the beavers plunged in with birch or willow saplings in their mouths, the wolverine stopped and listened. There was but little wind, and it became evident that even when the cruel beast had nearly reached the shore, and there crouched behind a small rock, the beavers were still unconscious of his presence. There was only a little strip of land, about a yard wide, between this rock and the water. But along this narrow strip the beavers had been coming and going while at their varied duties, and this, in some way or other, the cunning wolverine seemed to have discovered.

But while the boys and some of the Indians were intently watching his movements, others of them, as the result of long experience, had occasionally cast searching glances in every direction around them.

"Hist!" in a quiet whisper, arrested the attention of all. Without a word, but by a gesture scarcely perceptible, they were directed to look along the very trail the wolverine had made, and there, stealthily moving forward, now in the light and now in the shadow, they saw two large grey wolves.

This was complicating matters, and making things interesting indeed. The Indians, leaving the boys their guns loaded with ball, and enjoining perfect silence upon them, took up their own weapons, and noiselessly withdrew. So gloriously bright was the night in that land where fogs and mists are almost unknown, and where the rays of the moon cast a clear and distinct shadow, that everything passing was distinctly visible.

Out in the waters, and around the shore and on

the dam, were perhaps thirty beavers, hard at work. To the left below them lay crouching, like a ball of black wool, the savage, alert wolverine, patiently waiting until an unsuspecting beaver, loaded with wood, stones, or gravel, should pass along the trail within reach of his deadly spring.

A couple of hundred yards behind the wolverine, and high enough up on the hillside to observe his every movement, and yet not be observed by him, were the two wolves, now crouching down flat upon the ground. They remained so quiet that the boys were surprised, and wondered, if they were after the wolverine, why they did not attack him. But while they watched the wolverine, it became evident that it was not wolverine meat they sought, but beaver. And their hope was that the wolverine might obtain it for them. How far their expectations were realised, we shall see.

"Hush!" said Alec; "look!" And sure enough there were the Indians some hundreds of yards behind the wolves, and spread out like a third of a circle, cautiously moving on towards the two wolves that were intently watching the wolverine that was watching the beavers. It was to the hunters an interesting sight, and so fascinated the boys that they could hardly keep still.

Soon the tension was broken, and there was a sudden change. A couple of fine large beavers came along the trail on the shore, with a large stone which they evidently wished to take to the dam. So intent were they upon their work, that they knew not of danger until, with a great spring, the wolverine had fastened his sharp teeth and claws in the back of one of them, which uttering a cry of pain was dashed to the ground.

The other beaver instantly sprang into the water, as did all the rest within sound of that death cry.

In a few seconds the wolves, with great bounding leaps, had cleared the space between them and the wolverine. They attacked him fiercely, and endeavoured at once to secure the beaver. But the wolverine is a plucky animal when thus assailed, and he made a good fight for his hard-earned supper.

In the meantime, the instant the wolves started, the Indians, who from their higher ground had seen their movements, also began to advance, and ere the wolves and wolverine had settled the matter as to the ownership of the dead beaver, a volley of bullets killed the wolves, while the wolverine turned, and began climbing up the steep place of the hill where the boys were hidden.

"Shoot him!" shouted the Indians. An answering volley rang out from the boys' guns, and a dead wolverine, with three bullets in him, went tumbling back to the bottom of the hill.

No need for silence now, and so the long-continued hush was broken with a will, and there were many shouts and congratulations. The boys speedily and safely descended the hill on the side that sloped downwards in the direction of the men, and joined them at the spot where they were examining the dead wolves and beaver. The wolverine had not had much time to maul the latter, ere the wolves were upon him, and so the beaver was not very much torn. The splendid broad tail was uninjured, and the boys eagerly examined it. The dead wolverine was dragged in by the men, and it was decided, as dry wood was abundant, that some should make a fire, while others went for kettles, food and

blankets; and so there they spent the rest of the night.

They had two reasons for camping here. One was to be on hand to skin the animals early in the morning, and the other was to have the opportunity of inspecting the beaver dam, and seeing the size of some of the stumps, where those wonderful animals, with their teeth alone, had cut down the great trees.

A tired, sleepy trio were the boys, even ere their midnight meal was eaten, and very quickly afterwards they were rolled up in their blankets, and stretched out on the smooth rock, fast asleep.

As there are many wild animals in this part of the country, the Indians, ere they lay down to sleep, took the precaution of rolling on to the fire some of the logs cut down by the beavers. These would keep up a blaze until, at least, sunrise, after which there would be no danger.

Refreshing and invigorating is the sleep that comes to those who have the courage and enterprise to visit these lands, and live a great deal in the open air. The nights are seldom close and sultry. The air seems full of ozone, and scented with the balm of the great forest. Thus it was here, as in many similar experiences, with these hearty, healthy lads, and so soundly did they sleep, that it was after eight o'clock ere they opened their eyes. As they sprang up half-ashamed of themselves, the Indians chided them not, but one, in broken English, comforted them when he said:

"Plenty sleep, strong men, clear eye, firm grip; good medicine." They were consoled by this, and

ever after when they overslept themselves they called it "good medicine."

The wolves and wolverine were already skinned, and as soon as the boys had had the breakfasts which had long been waiting them, they set off to visit the beaver dam. When they reached it, they could hardly realise how it was possible that animals, not heavier than an ordinary retriever dog, could build such a structure. It was in shape like a crescent, with the outer curve up stream. It was thus able to meet and best resist the force of the great currents in times of freshets and of floods.

Many of the logs used in its construction would have been prized as valuable timber in sawmills, and, in addition to the large logs, there were great numbers that were smaller. It would occupy many men, with horses and carts, for many days to transport the stones, gravel and mud used; yet here was all of this material gathered by these animals, that have no tools but their teeth and paws, and all piled up and arranged in a manner so scientific and accurate that the best engineer in the land would not have lost anything in his reputation if he had claimed the work as his own careful planning.

The beaver house was also visited. It was apparently all built on the land, but it so overhung the pond at one side that the water ever found access, and there was abundance of room for the beavers to swim out or in whenever they desired. No attempt was made to break in, or in any way to disturb it, neither would there be in the winter months, when the Indians would make an attack upon them.

A more clever and successful way for their capture is well known, and this would be put in practice when the time arrived. But we must not anticipate an interesting adventure at this very spot.

The return to Sagastaweekee was made in a few days. With the exception of an upset of a canoe in one of the rapids, where they were trying to work up stream instead of making a portage, nothing of a startling nature occurred. Alec was the boy who was in this canoe, and he was quite carried under by the rapid current, and only reappeared above the surface a couple of hundred feet lower down. Fortunately there were other canoes near at hand, and he was quickly rescued. But the accident gave them all a fright. They lost everything in the canoe that would not float. They most regretted the loss of three reliable guns. After this, they were more cautious, and the boys were taught the lesson that these sports and adventures were not to be enjoyed without risk, and that there was at all times as great demand for caution and watchfulness, as for daring and courage.

capture  
practice  
cipate

a few  
canoe  
ing to  
ortage,  
e was  
quite  
only  
undred  
other  
esued.

They  
float.  
guns.  
d the  
ts and  
t risk,  
emand  
g and

## CHAPTER XXVI

An Excursion into the Reindeer Country—Numerous Herds—The Battle between Reindeer and Wolves in the Lake—Reaching the Herds—A Long Stalk for the Leader—Alec's Successful Shot—Consternation of the Herd—Abundance of Venison.

To see and, if possible, to hunt a herd of reindeer, both on land and in the water, was one of the ambitions of the boys. They had frequently heard some remarkable stories of these animals from northern hunters, whose homes were in regions which reindeer occasionally visited in their migrations, and they were much pleased when Mr. Ross, returning one day from the Hudson Bay Company's fort, informed them that a number of the Indians from those regions had arrived, and that he had obtained the permission of the Company's officials for the lads to go back with these Indians for some sport. He also added that the Indians themselves had stated that the herds of reindeer this year were numerous, and that it would be a very great pleasure to take charge of the young "pale faces," who were so highly spoken of by the red men, and do all they could to assist them in the sports of their country.

This was glorious news, and as the weeks were rapidly going by, no time was to be lost.



Alec deeply regretted the loss of his favourite gun, but Mr Ross replaced it with another, and so, well supplied, and with a couple of Indians, as servants to look after the camp and be on hand in any emergency, the journey was commenced under the happiest auspices.

We need not repeat the description of the trip down or up the rivers and across the portages. There were several nights when they slept as usual at the camp fires on the rocks. There was a good deal of sunshine, and there were a few storms.

They passed through some lakes of rarest beauty, which simply fascinated the boys and drew from them the warmest expressions of admiration of which they were capable. Even Sam lost his powers of speech for a time at some glimpses on these lovely sheets, where the water was so transparent that it seemed as though they were paddling through the air; then, when the spell was broken, he exclaimed, in almost sorrowful tones:

"That beats Killarney."

How glorious must have been the scene, when even a loyal Irish boy would make such an admission.

The Dominion of Canada has in it more fresh-water lakes than any other country in the world. Some of them are equal, if not superior, in the clearness and purity of their waters, in the distinctness of the reflections cast upon their limpid surface by surrounding hill or forest, and in the wild, weird beauty of their environment, to any of the old world's favourite ones, so long praised in song and story. They are gradually being discovered and prized, for some of them are as a poet's dream and a painter's vision.

The lads saw various wild animals, but as the party



the gun,  
o, well  
as ser-  
and in  
under

the trip  
ortages.  
usual  
a good

beauty,  
v from  
f which  
vers of  
lovely  
that it  
ugh the  
he ex-

en even  
on.  
e fresh-  
world.  
in the  
listinct-  
surface  
e wild,  
of the  
in song  
covered  
s dream

the party

A PAINTER'S VISION—A POET'S DREAM.





had charge of the trading outfit for the Hudson Bay Company's post in that region of country, they were under obligations to push on as rapidly as possible. The only time they did make a stop of any length was in Split Lake, where, as they were rowing their boats along, they observed a great commotion in the water some distance ahead of them. When they drew near, they saw it was a battle between a couple of splendidly-antlered reindeer and four wolves.

It was evident that the wolves were being badly worsted in the fight, as the reindeer were now the aggressors. From the Indians' idea of it, it looked as if the wolves had either chased the deer into the lake, or, seeing them in there swimming, had plunged in after them. The deer at first, much alarmed, had boldly struck out into the lake, and were followed by the wolves. Of course it was impossible to say whether the wolves had been able to reach them and make the attack, or whether the reindeer, when they had drawn the wolves a long way out, had then turned upon them.

The reindeer has large lungs, and so swims high on the water. He is not only able to use his antlers, but can turn while swimming and kick most viciously. A wolf can only swim like a dog, and as his head is down low he cannot make much of a fight. And so the boys had the rare sight of seeing a couple of deer chasing, with great delight, four of the foes they most dreaded on land.

The combatants passed across the bows of the boat near enough for them to see quite distinctly the deer suddenly give a spurt, and then strike the wolves with their great horns. Every effort of the wolves to attack seemed to meet with complete failure, until

at length their only ambition was to reach the shore, and in this two were successful; the other two were drowned by the deer.

The triumph of the deer over their cruel and relentless foes gave very much delight to the Indians, as well as to Frank, Alec and Sam, and it was decided not to fire at the beautiful creatures, but to leave them to enjoy their victory.

After several days more of travel and adventure, they reached the trading post on Burntwood River, and shortly after started off to Lake Woolaston, as the hunters had reported that reindeer were there in great herds. To that place they travelled in birch canoes, and the boys were much happier in them than in the big boats in which, with the Company's goods, they had come from Norway House.

They saw traces of bears, beavers, wild cats and other animals, but they were after reindeer, and just now cared but little for any other kind of game. At a camp fire, where they were having supper, the old Indian, who had been appointed captain on account of his experience in this kind of hunting, gave the boys some instructions how to act should they discover a large herd. He told them it would not be very difficult to get within range of one or more of the deer, but they were to crawl up as close to the herd as possible, on the leeward side, and then, from their hiding places, watch them until they saw the great stag that was the leader of the herd. They would not have any trouble in picking him out. They would soon see how he bossed the rest and was always at the head when the herd moved.

What they were to do was to keep moving along

with the deer, skulking from one rock to the shelter of another, and taking advantage of every inequality in the ground to get within range of the leader, "but never let him once get sight of you." It did not so much matter about the others, as they would not run until the leader started, unless very much frightened. The boys were told to take, in addition to guns and ammunition, some food, small axes in their belts, and their trusty knives. They were not to be discouraged if hours passed before they got a shot at the leader. They were to be patient, and they would succeed. The boys were amazed when this old Indian told them that sometimes he had followed a great herd for three days before he got at the leader. "But," he added, "it well paid me, for I shot twelve deer ere they had a new leader."

How this could happen was a mystery to the boys, until the Indian explained to them that when these herds come down fresh from the great barren lands, under the guidance of the leader, they have such confidence in him, or are in such fear of him, that when he is shot down the whole herd is thrown into confusion, and run here and there, and jump about in such a foolish manner, waiting for their leader to show them the way, that a quick, clever Indian, hidden behind a rock, or standing in some dense bushes, can keep loading and firing until he shoots from six to a dozen of them. Ultimately another great stag gives a snort, and dashes off, and they all follow him as their new leader. They are now so frightened that, under his leadership, they will generally run a great many miles ere they stop.

Early one morning, shortly after this information had been imparted to the boys by the experienced

old Indian, some scouts, who had been on the lookout, came in with the information that two herds of deer were visible. They were in different parts, and could be hunted at the same time without any difficulty.

At once all preparations were made. As but one boy and one Indian could go together, it was decided that Frank and Alec should make the first attempt to show their skill in this kind of hunting. The old captain took Alec with him, while another almost equally experienced hunter accompanied Frank.

Sam was left boss of the camp, but he determined to do a little hunting on his own account, while the rest were off after the reindeer.

The clothing of the boys was inspected by the Indians, and everything of a bright nature was discarded. They were all dressed in smoke-leather suits, with caps to match. This made them almost the colour of the rocks and dried ferns or bracken, among which they would have to do a good deal of crawling. The hunters left the camp about six o'clock in the morning, Alec and the captain going in a north-easterly direction, and Frank and his companion about due west. They agreed to be back, if possible, not later than midnight. Each Indian, however, took the precaution of strapping on his back a grey blanket, in case of delay.

We will first follow the adventures of Alec and the captain.

They started off in a north-easterly direction, and had to travel several miles ere, from an eminence, the herd was sighted far away. They were feeding as they moved along leisurely, and seemed to

have no suspicion of danger. It was in our hunters' favour that the country was very much broken, with a succession of hills and dales, rocky ridges and ravines, clumps of spruce forests and long stretches of marshy lands in which the dried ferns and bracken were abundant. The first thing after the discovery of the herd in the distance was to find out the direction in which they seemed to be moving, and then to notice the direction of the wind, as it is always best to be on the lee side on account of the scent.

All arrangements being made, the two started off rapidly, as it was possible to push on for a long time without much precaution, owing to the character of the country. Alec's trips to the Highlands of his beloved Scotland, and his excursions with an experienced gillie there, stood him in good service here. After about an hour's swift travelling, the Indian said:

"We are not far from them—stay here a few minutes while I go to that large rock and see how they are moving, and if I can make out the leader. Keep where you can see me when I come down a little from the side of the rock, and if I stretch out my arms for a sign, come on and join me there."

Alec was not kept long waiting, for as soon as his companion had crawled to the summit of the rock that rose up before them, he speedily drew back a little so as to be out of sight of the deer, and gave the signal to advance. It did not take Alec long to join him. The Indian informed him that the herd was a large one, and that some of the deer were so close that they could easily be shot from the top of the rock.

Very cautiously did they both climb to the point of observation, and there, before them, carelessly moving along was a magnificent herd of several hundred splendid deer. As food was abundant, they were in prime condition, and were a beautiful sight. Numbers of them were very heavily antlered, and as Alec tried to count the numerous points, he saw many that would pass muster as "royals" in the Highlands. It was evident the leader was not to be distinguished from that position, and so the keen-eyed Indian watched the gradually-receding herd for a few minutes until he was perfectly satisfied of the direction they intended to keep; this he indicated to Alec, and stated that in all probability several hours must pass ere they would get a shot.

Carefully retreating, they began their march in a line parallel with the herd, but generally from two to four hundred yards distant, according to the cover the country afforded to screen them from observation. Several times the Indian left Alec carefully hidden, while he, as we have before described, took advantage of some high rock, or steep declivity, to crawl forward and observe the position of the deer. On one of these tours of inspection the Indian noticed that before them was now a long valley, and that the appearance of the country was as though two hills came close together, with only a narrow passage between. Almost as by an intuition—perhaps it was the result of long experience—the Indian reasoned: If we can reach that spot ahead of the herd we are almost sure to be successful; but can we do it?

Rapidly returning to Alec, he told him what he



had seen and what he thought might be accomplished.

"Let us try," said Alec, excitedly, and off they started. The Indian was amazed at the endurance of this Scotch lad, who kept so close up to him in his rapid march. When well sheltered behind great rocky ridges, or in ravines, they ran without fear of being discovered; but on a barren plain, with scores of deer in sight, it was a different matter. There they had to crawl, snake-like, along the ground. Thus on they went, the Indian repeatedly uttering a cheery word of encouragement to Alec, whose pluck and endurance had won his admiration.

"What is that?" they both said, as they crouched as low as possible.

"Wait till I see," said the Indian, and he crawled forward to discover.

When he came back he said:—

"It is all right; only a big buck crowded up too near the front, and the leader turned on him and they had a battle, in which the intruder was soon conquered and driven back."

This delay stopped the deer for a time, and so Alec and his companion were now about in a line with the front of the herd.

Only about a mile more had they to cover ere they reached the desired position, and about half-an-hour before the deer arrived they were well hidden and ready for action. They had taken the precaution to get their ammunition ready, so that if they threw the herd into confusion they might have several shots ere it dashed away.

Soon the deer were close to them and they

could hear them very distinctly. Cautiously the Indian watched them, and then, as arranged, he signalled to Alec who was stretched out behind a rock with a narrow cleft in it. This break was just large enough as a lookout, and it would also serve as a good rest for the gun. Alec peeped through this narrow opening, and his heart gave a great thump, for there, within fifty yards of him, was the most magnificent deer he had ever seen. There was no difficulty now in picking out the leader.

Pulling himself together, he waited until he was steady, and then, aiming so as to strike the game immediately behind the fore-shoulder, he fired. The deer gave one great bound, and dropped dead. Instantly there rang out another report as Alec's comrade fired, and another great deer fell dead. Immediately followed one of those panics that occur among reindeer when their leader is suddenly shot down. They made no attempt to escape. They ran up to where the fallen stag lay, and then they retreated a hundred yards or so. Some ran one way and some another, and then veered around and returned again.

In the meantime Alec and the Indian were loading and firing, until, perhaps, between them a dozen deer had been killed. Then the Indian gave the signal to stop, but they continued to watch for several minutes more, while the panic-stricken and bewildered creatures aimlessly ran from point to point.

"Look!" said the Indian. "Quick! see the new leader."

And sure enough there was a great, handsome fellow snorting out his notes of authority and

D

sly the  
ged, he  
behind  
s break  
would  
. Alec  
is heart  
y yards  
he had  
picking

he was  
ame im-  
d. The  
ad. In-  
s Alec's  
l dead.  
at occur  
ly shot  
they ran  
n they  
ran one  
nd and

n were  
them  
Indian  
ued to  
panic-  
ly ran

he new

ndsome  
y and

111

ALEC SHOOTS THE LEADER OF THE RENDEZ.





defiance. None disputed his guidance, and so off he started, and in a few seconds not a deer, with the exception of those that were shot, was visible. No hunters could get within range then, nor for many a day to come.

"Why did you give the word to stop firing?" said Alec.

"Because," answered the Indian, "we had killed as many as our people can eat before the meat will spoil, and we must not kill the deer if we do not need the meat. The Great Spirit gives us these things for food. We must not make Him angry by killing more than we need."

Well done, red man! Would that some white hunters, when bent on the wholesale destruction of valuable animals just for the mad ambition to kill, had some of his wisdom and religion.

The deer were bled, and when the entrails were removed they were placed where they could be found next day by those who would come for them. The Indian cut out a splendid haunch, which he strapped on his back; then the return trip was begun, and the camp was reached in the small hours of the next morning. Very tired, but very proud, was Alec as he strode with his Indian companion into the camp. The fire was burning low, for all the rest of the party were sound asleep, and it looked as though they had been so for hours. Alec, who had been so successful, was anxious to hear how it had fared with Frank, who had started off with another Indian after the other herd that had been sighted.

However, Frank was too tired and sleepy to say much then, and so he did not trouble him. Alec enjoyed the hastily-prepared supper, for which he

had a glorious appetite after such a long, heavy day's exciting sport. Then he rolled his blanket around him, cuddled himself between Sam and Frank, and was soon wrapped in dreamless slumber.

The chief and favourite part of the breakfast the next morning was the broiled steaks of that famous haunch of venison which Alec's comrade had brought back to the camp.

heavy  
anket  
and  
mless

kfast  
that  
e had

## CHAPTER XXVII

Frank's Adventures—The Reindeer followed—Unwelcome  
Interlopers—Cowardly Wolves Stalking the Fawn—  
Repelled by the Gallant Bucks—Close Quarters—  
Successful Shots—Different Game than Reindeer—  
Visions of Splendour.

FRANK'S experience was a very different one from that of Alec.

He and his companion had gone out in a westerly direction until they sighted the herd of deer a few miles away. They followed them up till they came so near as to have them well within range, but, like other hunters, they were anxious to kill the leader so as to throw the herd into confusion. With this object in view they carefully skulked along, hiding behind the clumps of bushes and rocky ridges that were quite numerous.

All at once they heard a snorting and a sound of rushing hither and thither among the deer, and they climbed up some rocks and cautiously looked over to try and find out what was the cause of the commotion. At first they could not make out what was the matter, but after a while they saw that the herd had other hunters than themselves after them. They were attacked by a pack of wolves!

They were at the front of the herd, and Frank and the Indian quickly drew back from the rock and hurried on to see the battle. Fortunately for

them the reindeer were so excited by the presence of the wolves that our two hunters were able to get among some large, jagged rocks that rose up fifty or sixty feet not very distant from them. Here they had a capital view of the valley in which were the deer and the wolves. There seemed to be about a dozen wolves in the pack, and perhaps two hundred reindeer in the herd, including about thirty young ones, from five to six months old.

The object of the wolves seemed to be to evade the great antlers of the bucks, and to capture those pretty young fawns. It was very interesting to watch the skill and courage with which the bucks closed up like a company of cavalry and charged the wolves when they ventured close to the herd. The wolves never waited to receive the charge, but ignominiously turned tail and ran for their lives. They, however, soon returned when no longer pursued. There seemed to be a thorough understanding among the deer as to the position each should take while menaced by the wolves. The large-antlered ones formed the outside circle. Next inside were the hornless males and the does, while in a compact body in the centre were the fawns.

Thus they slowly moved on, while the wolves attempted at various parts to break through, but always quickly retreated when a company of the bucks gallantly charged them.

This strange conflict was watched by Frank and his companion with intense interest, until it came to an abrupt ending. It happened in this way. In one of the determined charges made upon the wolves by perhaps thirty reindeer, they drove their cowardly enemies right up among the rocks just beyond where Frank and his companion had



hidden themselves. The close proximity of the wolves so excited Frank that he whispered to the Indian:

"Let us fire at the wolves and never mind the deer."

The fact was, Frank's sympathies had so gone out to the deer, as he watched the incessant schemings of the wolves to get at the beautiful fawns, and the gallant efforts of the old ones to defend them, that he had no heart to fire into the herd. He could see that their firing into the herd would so terrify and disorganise it that the wolves would easily destroy the little ones.

From where they were hidden the two hunters noticed that the wolves, now no longer chased by the reindeer, were again clustering near the rocks, utterly unconscious of the fact that between them and the herd were some enemies more dreaded even than the antlered foes.

"All right," said the Indian, in answer to Frank's request, "but be sure and kill two with your bullet."

Simultaneously there rang out the double report, and four wolves fell dead. The others, terrified by this attack, so unexpected and so close, fled away towards the distant forest.

Having made sure that the wolves did not stop in their flight, they quickly reached a position where they had the herd of deer again in view. Frank was delighted to observe that although they seemed to have been somewhat startled by the reports of the guns, they had not broken their formation, and were now quickly hurrying away. To skin the four wolves and return with their pelts to the camp was all the sport they had, or wanted, for that day.

At first Alec was inclined to boast of a more successful day in reindeer hunting, but when he heard the whole story, he was willing to admit that perhaps after all, Frank's had been the nobler experience.

Sam's characteristic comments were :

"Man, but I would have liked to have had a crack at that great leader; but I think I would have preferred to have had the satisfaction of knocking over a couple more of those dirty, thievish, murdering wolves."

One more great excursion was arranged ere they returned. This was to a large lake, to which watchers had been sent some days before.

A couple of days after Frank and Alec had had the adventures with the reindeer, these watchers came in with word that the deer were numerous on the shore of the lake, and often seen swimming but into the water. After two days' much-needed rest all were fresh and eager to be off again.

Very little time is lost in breaking up camp when once it is decided to move, and in a short time the canoes, propelled by the paddles in the hands of the stalwart Indians, were dancing over the sunlit waves, to their next destination, some twenty miles away. Arrived here they found that the Indians, who had been sent as scouts or watchers, had already returned and prepared a cosy camp for their reception. A dinner of venison, bear's meat and ducks was ready for them, and after the score of miles of paddling, for the boys always insisted on doing their share, they were all ready to do ample justice to the hunters' fare.

As the sport was expected to prove exciting, and was generally considered to be more successful in

the forenoons, it was decided to keep quiet that afternoon and evening. The guns were all cleaned and oiled, and many pipes of tobacco were smoked by the Indians, while the boys wandered along the shores and enjoyed the sights of that picturesque land. Just a little before sunset they had a display of colour such as is seldom given to mortals to see upon this earth of ours. In the west there floated a cloud that seemed to hang in the sky like a great prism. Beyond it, the sun in his splendour was slowly settling down towards the horizon. Through this prism-like cloud there were reflected upon the waters all the colours of the rainbow. Every dancing wave seemed at one moment to be of deepest crimson, the next like molten gold, only to be quickly transformed into some other gorgeous hue, until the whole lake seemed literally ablaze with dazzling colours.

The boys were awed and silenced amidst these glories, and sat down on a rock, entranced and almost overwhelmed. By-and-by the prism-like cloud that had hung for perhaps half-an-hour in that position, slowly drifted away and the sun again shone down in undimmed splendour, and the glorious vision ended.

Then the spell that had so long held the boys was broken, and in silence they looked at each other. Frank was the first to speak, and his quiet words were:—

"I have seen the 'sea of glass mingled with fire,' that John saw in Patmos."

"And I," said Alec, "thought of the city of mansions where the streets are of gold and the walls jasper, and the gates pearl."

"And I," said Sam, "thought, if that is a glimpse

of Heaven I can understand why one has said, 'Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither hath it entered into the heart of man to conceive the things which God hath prepared for them that love Him.'"

Quietly, and yet with happy hearts, they then returned to the camp.

Eye  
tered  
which  
  
then

## CHAPTER XXVIII

Boys' Adventure with Reindeer in the Lake—Gad-Flies and other Deer Pests—Peculiar Weapons—Dangerous Antagonists—Hoofs and Horns—Frank's Success—Attack on the Leader—Canoe smashed—Alec and the Indians in the Water—Sam's Stratagem—Success at Last—The Return Trip—Significant Signs—Ducks and Geese Heading Southward—Indians uneasy—Journey hastened—Sagastaweekee reached—Summer ended—Winter begun.

REFRESHED and invigorated by the much-needed rest, the boys, with their Indian companions, started off the next morning for the lake, which had become the reindeer's favourite bathing resort. So early did they arrive there, that they had to wait for some hours ere a deer was to be seen.

The principal reason why deer spend so much time in the water seems to be to get rid of the troublesome flies that very much annoy them. Some species of gad-fly not only sting them, but insert their eggs under the skin. These soon develop into large grub, and some of the skins of the reindeer are so perforated by these pests that they are absolutely worthless to the Indians.

The deer were late in coming out into the lake

this morning because, as the summer was nearly gone, the nights were now long and cool, and the gad-flies are only troublesome in the warm hours of the bright sunshine.

A herd of reindeer swimming in the water is a very pretty sight. Having large lungs, and thus being very buoyant, they swim high, and being such good swimmers, they make, when a number of them are disporting themselves undisturbed, a very beautiful picture.

While our party of hunters was waiting in their shady retreat, secluded from observation, the Indians, with as little noise as possible, cut down some poles and trimmed them smooth for use. When finished they were between ten and twelve feet long, and from one to two inches in diameter. To the larger end of each was securely lashed, with deer-skin thongs, a long, sharp, double-edged knife. About eleven o'clock, the Indian scouts sent out to watch the movements of the deer, returned with the report that the greater portion of the herd had taken to the water. In order to be sure of success in the hunt, it was decided to carry the canoes through the woods, and embark as near as possible to the spot where the deer had plunged into the lake. This would place the hunters in the rear of their game, and thus give them a very decided advantage.

As the Indians were anxious to get as many reindeer as possible, for the sake of the meat, a large portion of which they desired to make into pemmican, they decided to send out six canoes on this day's expedition.

Our boys were each assigned a canoe and some Indian hunters, who were supposed to be well versed in this exciting sport. Each canoe was

furnished with one of these newly-improvised spears, while each boy and hunter had his gun and axe.

The six canoes were noiselessly placed in the water at a spot where some great, overhanging branches reached down to the water's edge. All were thus enabled to embark without attracting attention, or in the slightest degree alarming the deer that were now swimming about in the lake. Pushing aside the bushes, they all shot out at the same moment, and, vigorously plying their paddles, began the attack.

The deer, startled and alarmed by the sudden appearance of the canoes, at first attempted to escape by returning to the shore. Finding, however, that their retreat was cut off, all there was left for them to do was to strike boldly out from land, and get, if possible, beyond the reach of their pursuers. As the lake was a very large one, there was no possibility of their being able to swim across. The Indians knew they would not attempt this, but would return and give battle in the water, if their endeavours to shake off pursuit were unsuccessful.

The three canoes, in which were the boys, started out side by side, and there was a good deal of excitement and rivalry as to whom should fall the honour of bagging the first reindeer.

Fast though the reindeer can swim, Indian canoeemen can paddle their canoes much faster; and it was not long ere the deer, which, on finding that their retreat was cut off, had boldly struck out from shore, were overtaken.

"Kill none but those in prime condition, and let no

canoe kill more than four," were the orders given to all.

As on some former occasions in similar hunting adventures, the boys were each assigned the post of honour—that was the position in the very front of the canoe—so that they might be the first to attack the deer when they came within striking distance.

As they drew near to the deer and saw how they swam, the lads were able to see what effective weapons were these knives bound to the poles. Of course the terrified deer made the most desperate efforts to escape. But, in spite of all they could do, their pursuers steadily gained upon them.

"Do not be in a hurry," said one of the Indians in Frank's canoe to him, when he seemed eager to throw his newly-formed spear, as though it were a javelin, at a great antlered fellow who, as though conscious of their desire to reach his head, very cleverly, and, for a time, successfully kept them off.

The Indians know—some by bitter experience—the ability of the reindeer, when swimming, to kick out viciously behind, and smash the canoe that has been paddled up too close to them by over-eager, excited hunters.

Hence experienced Indians give that end of a swimming reindeer a wide berth, and endeavour to get within striking distance of the head only.

"Ready now," the man quickly spoke again, as this time, by a quick movement, they succeeded in getting beyond his heels, and came rapidly alongside of him.

"Strike him just behind the head, and strike hard,"



were the next words Frank heard, and, with all his strength, he plunged his spear into the neck of the great animal. He did not, however, strike across the spine, and sever the spinal cord, as he should have done, and so he only inflicted an ugly flesh wound, which irritated the great deer, and caused him to turn round and give battle to the canoe and all of its occupants. But rapidly as he turned, he was not as quick as the sharp Indians, who, watching every movement, and seeing the failure of Frank, suddenly paddled back from him. Rendered furious by the wound, and seeing his enemies retreating, he came on resolutely and rapidly.

"Try the gun," said one of the Indians; and Frank, mortified at his failure with the spear, was not slow to respond.

Carefully aiming for the curl on the forehead, between the eyes, he pulled the trigger and, as the report rang out, the great deer turned over dead in the water.

A cheer rang out proclaiming the first success.

Alec and his men struck out for a stag of great size that they supposed was the leader of the herd. Not only had he a most magnificent pair of antlers, and, to judge by the way in which he swam, splendid lungs, but he seemed to be trying to direct and control the frightened deer.

When he saw that he was being himself attacked, he immediately, as became the leader of the herd, turned to meet the advancing canoe and give battle.

It was unfortunate for Alec that his Indian canoemen, while clever hunters, were inexperienced in the tactics of an old, wily reindeer. It would

have been wiser on their part, if, when they saw him swing round and boldly come on to the attack, they had used their guns; but that is considered the last resort in this kind of sport. The great ambition is to kill the deer with their spears.

Alec and his comrades wished to carry off the honours in this contest, and when the great fellow came within reach, they tried with a couple of spears to kill him. But a clever, rapid twist of his horns parried their spear thrusts, and before they fairly knew how it happened, the side of their canoe was crushed in like an egg-shell, and they were all struggling in the water.

It was well for them that they were good swimmers when they struck out! The other canoes, seeing the disaster, had at once begun paddling to their rescue, for here was the greatest danger that the infuriated deer would pursue one or more of them, in which case they would have a poor chance. It is well known that a man in the water is no match for an angry deer. With horns, and sharp, chisel-like hoofs the deer is able to make a gallant fight, as we have already seen in the case of this one.

However, it was soon evident that in this instance there was no danger. The deer kept venting his displeasure on the canoe and paid not the slightest notice to those who had so suddenly sprung out of it on the opposite side from him, and were now rapidly swimming away. The poor canoe, however, had to be the butt of his ire as well as of his horns, and soon all there was left of it were a few splinters floating on the water.

The guns, axes, spears and other heavy articles were at the bottom of the lake.

The swimmers were helped into the other canoes, and the sport was resumed. When several deer had been killed they were fastened by long deer-skin thongs, like lariats, to the stern of a couple of canoes, and towed through the water to the shore. Alec and his wet comrades went with them, and, at a great fire built up on the beach, soon dried themselves and were none the worse for their involuntary swim.

For a time the great deer that had come off so victoriously was left swimming around in his glory, none seeming to care to get to close quarters with him except Sam, who, of a different mind, was eager for a round with him. Of course it would not have been difficult to shoot him, but, as has been stated, the Indians think there is no honour or skill in shooting a deer in the water, because he cannot swim as fast as they can paddle their canoes. So in each canoe they were holding back and waiting for someone else to tackle the big fellow.

When Sam told the Indians in his canoe that he wished they would attack him, they admired his courage and grit, and one of them, with a bit of a twinkle in his eye, asked:

"You able to swim as well as Alec?"

"Yes, indeed," he replied; "but there will be no need for my trying."

"How you want to kill him?" asked another Indian.

Sam's quick rejoinder was:

"I want to spear him, of course."

His enthusiasm was contagious, and at once the Indians said:

"All right; we will try."

Word was then signalled to the other boats that the one in which Sam was would try the gallant old fellow.

The men in the other canoes heard this with pleasure, and ceased, for a time, from their pursuits to watch the coming struggle.

The Indian in charge of Sam's canoe wisely explained to him how, if they were possibly able to get him alongside of the deer, to spear him through the spinal cord, as near the head as possible. They also took the precaution to have a couple of guns and axes handy, where, in case of emergency, they could be instantly utilised.

When the great reindeer saw them coming down boldly towards him he at once accepted the situation, and, leaving a number of deer that had been keeping with him for some time, he gallantly turned to face them.

When within twenty or thirty yards, as decided upon by the Indians, they suddenly veered to the right, and kept paddling in eccentric circles around him, keeping him in the centre and, as nearly as possible, at about the same distance. That he could not reach the canoe and annihilate it as easily as he did the other one seemed to irritate him very much, and for a time he was furious with rage.

But, in spite of his fury, they quietly, yet warily watched him, and kept up their circular movement about him. After a time, seeing it was an utter impossibility to catch them, he turned and endeavoured to swim to the shore. Now the attacked became the aggressors, and the canoe rapidly followed in his wake. Several times they tried to draw up alongside and spear him, but a sudden turn of that well-antlered head was enough to cause them

to draw back hurriedly. But something must be done, or he would speedily be at the land. So they signalled another canoe to make a feint to attack him from the other side.

The one in which Frank was paddling with his Indians soon came up, and when told what was desired of them, quickly responded.

The deer, thus worried by the two, had hardly a fair chance, but he gallantly kept up the unequal struggle. Sam's canoemen at length saw an unguarded place, and dashed in alongside of the big fellow, and at the right minute the Indian who steered called out to Sam, who was in the bow, "Now give it to him in the neck, close up to his head."

Sam was not quite quick enough, and so his spear, which he plunged into the deer, with all the force of which he was capable, did not instantly kill, but so cut down the side of the neck as to sever some large veins. Unfortunately for Sam, he could not withdraw the spear from the deer, and as he was in no humour to lose it, he hung on to it. Before he knew where he was, a great bound of the deer jerked him out of the canoe. He fell fairly and squarely on the back of the great deer, and he was not such a fool as not to avail himself of this opportunity for a ride. Speedily righting himself on this odd steed, amidst the laughter of Frank and the Indians, he prepared for a good time.

It might have fared badly with him if the deer had been able to use his horns freely, or to move with his usual speed in the water. But the additional weight on his back so sank him down that he was powerless to do harm. All he could do, after

a few desperate efforts to get rid of his burden, was to start for the shore and continue speedily swimming towards it, as though this was his usual employment.

Sam hung on without much trouble, but as they neared the shore he began to wonder what might happen next.

But when his antlered steed reached the shallow waters, his strength gave way from the excessive loss of blood from the severed veins in his neck, and he dropped stone dead. The great carcase was dragged ashore, while the bodies of the others killed were towed in by the canoes. They killed altogether ten animals, so the first reindeer hunt in the water, considering the loss of a fine canoe and all its contents, was not voted an unqualified success.

All the Indians present at the camp, which they made near the spot from which they had embarked in the morning, went to work at the venison, and in a few hours they had it all cut into strips and broad flakes, and hung up on stagings of poles speedily erected. A smokeless fire under, and the bright sun above it, in a few days made the meat so hard and dry, that by using the backs of their axes for hammers, and pounding this meat on the smooth wooden logs, they thoroughly pulverised it. Packing it in bags made of the green hides of the deer, and saturating the whole mass with the melted fat taken from around the kidneys of the deer, they had thus prepared a most palatable kind of pemmican. If well prepared in this way, it is considered fully equal to that made from the buffalo on the great plains.

Leaving the majority of the Indians of that country to continue their pursuit of the reindeer

for the manufacture of pemmican, Frank, Alec and Sam, with their travelling companions, returned to Oxford House. There they made a visit of a few days to the home of the missionary. It was a great joy to meet with this devoted man, and his equally brave and noble wife, who, for the sake of the christianisation and the civilisation of the Indians of this section of the country, had willingly sacrificed the comforts and blessings of home civilisation, and come to this land. Only twice a year did they hear from the outer world; and only once every year had they an opportunity of receiving any of the so-called necessities of life at this remote station. Yet they said, and showed that they were very happy in their work, and rejoiced at the success which, not only to themselves, but to any unbiased observer, was so visibly manifested in the greatly improved lives and habits of the natives. Missions to such people are not failures.

The boys would have been delighted to have lingered longer in this home, and with this delightful missionary and his good wife, but the Indians who were to take them back to Sagastaweekee were uneasy at the appearances in the heavens, and of the birds in the air, and it was decided that they must return.

Four days of rapid paddling were sufficient to make the return journey. At the close of each day, the boys remarked, as they cuddled up close to the splendid camp fire, that they seemed to have an additional liking for its glow and warmth. For the first time, they preferred to sleep as close together as possible, and were thankful that the thoughtful Indians had in reserve for them an



additional blanket. The last day of the home journey was quite a cold one, but the vigorous exercise of paddling saved them from any discomfort. They could not but notice the large numbers of geese and ducks that were flying over them, and all were going south. The boys would have liked to have stopped where these were specially numerous, and have had a few hours' shooting, but the Indians said:

"Perhaps to-morrow you will see it was best for us to get home."

So "forward" was the word, and on they went, till they reached home after an exceedingly rapid journey from Oxford Lake.

They met with a right royal welcome at Sagastaweekee; Mr and Mrs Ross and the children were all delighted to have them back again.

The faithful canoemen were well paid, and given a capital supper in the kitchen, and then dismissed to their several homes.

Frank, Alec and Sam had each to give some account of his adventures to the household they were gathered that evening around the roaring fire, whose warmth and glow was so pleasant.

Then prayers were offered, and away the boys went to their rooms. They could not but remark to each other how much warmer their beds were than when they last slept in them. However, they found them none too warm as they cuddled down in their downy depths and were soon fast asleep.

When they awoke next morning, the sleet and snow were beating with fury against the window panes, and all nature was white with her unstained mantle of ermine beauty.



Shortly after, the wind went down, and then the ice covered over all the open waters, and they saw that that most delightful summer in the Wild North Land was gone, and the winter, with its cold and brightness, and possibilities for other kinds of sports and adventures, was theirs without any doubt.

THE END

# MESSRS WARD & DOWNEY'S

## Illustrated Books for Boys and Girls

### A BOOK FOR CHILDREN

**THE PILGRIM CHILD.** By Miss THEODORA C. ELMSLIE, Author of "The Little Lady of Lavender," "Black Puppy," "Those Midsummer Fairies," etc. Imperial 16mo, cloth extra, gilt top, price 3s. 6d.

This book has six full-page and many smaller Illustrations by Miss EDITH SCANNELL and H. L. E., and a specially designed frontispiece and cover. It is printed on super-calendered paper.

It is an allegorical story of a little boy who, led by "an Angel called Faith," passes along the narrow way of daily life, with its "sunbeams" and its "shades," surmounts the Hill of Difficulty with a "Cross that proved a Shield," and arrives at last "at the Gates of the City Celestial."

It is a book simple enough for a child of nine, yet well suited for those who are older.

It is published in this country by Messrs Ward & Downey, and simultaneously in the United States by the American Sunday School Union.

"A really beautiful allegorical story. . . . Will be precious alike to mother and children."—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

"Religious teaching has seldom been put in a more winning way. The volume is charmingly illustrated."—*Scotsman*.

"Miss Elmslie has proved herself capable of entering very thoroughly into the feelings of little ones, and in the approaching festive season it would be difficult to conceive a more appropriate present."—*Dundee Courier*.

### A BOOK FOR BOYS

**THE QUEST OF THE GOLDEN PEARL.** By J. R. HUTCHINSON. With eleven Illustrations by HUME NISBET. Imp. 16mo, with specially designed cloth cover, gilt top, 3s. 6d.

The story is one of adventure in Ceylon and the adjoining seas. Two English lads give chase by sea and land to a shark-charmer, who is believed to have abstracted a golden pearl of exceeding value. The narrative is full of thrilling events, and is written by one who is familiar with the scenery and surroundings amidst which the actors move.

The full-page Illustrations are a feature of interest, as the artist is well acquainted with the country and its people.

### A BOOK FOR CHILDREN

**THE REVOLT OF THE YOUNG MACCORMACKS.** By Miss VIOLET G. FINNY. With twelve characteristic Illustrations by Miss EDITH SCANNELL. Imp. 16mo, specially designed cloth cover, gilt top, 3s. 6d.

This is a highly amusing description of a lively family of Irish children, two brothers and two sisters. The scene is laid in Dublin, and then at their grandmother's country seat at which the pet donkey, "Piper," the children's somewhat unwilling assistant in an exciting enterprise, plays an important part.

### A BOOK FOR BOYS

**A COLONIAL TRAMP: Travels and Adventures in Australia and New Guinea.** By HUME NISBET, Author of "The Land of the Hibiscus Blossom," etc., with over fifty Illustrations by the Author. 1 vol., crown 8vo, 480 pages, cloth, price 6s.

*The Spectator* has described this volume as "One of the most attractive and entertaining of modern books of travel."

## NEY'S Girls

LMSLIE, Author  
"Those Mid-  
a, gilt top, price

rations by Miss  
ned frontispiece

by "an Angel  
e, with its "sun-  
difficulty with a  
he Gates of the

well suited for

ney, and simul-  
School Union.  
like to mother and

ay. The volume is

thoroughly into the  
ould be difficult to

By J. R. HUTCH-  
ET. Imp. 16mo,  
d.

e adjoining seas.  
rk-charmer, who  
ling value. The  
e who is familiar  
ctors move.  
e, as the artist is

**RMACKS.** By  
istic Illustrations  
ly designed cloth

y family of Irish  
s laid in Dublin,  
the pet donkey,  
nt in an exciting

ures in Australia  
of "The Land of  
ustrations by the  
ice 6s.

e attractive and enter-

